

## Introduction

This document describes how the TEI standard was customized for the project *Lectures that Link*. The project focuses on building a data collection of Digital Humanities lecture series hosted by European institutions between 2014 and early 2025. The primary emphasis is on the lecture series themselves, the individual lectures within these series, and the speakers involved. Detailed descriptions of who these data were collected and encoded in TEI are provided in the following sections, with examples included in the running text.

## Data Sources and Strategy for Data Selection and Capture

All data used in this project was exclusively sourced from publicly accessible websites, ensuring that only freely available information was included. Data behind authentication barriers, such as those requiring login credentials, was deliberately excluded from the collection process.

In addition to textual information about the lecture series found on individual websites, additional digital materials related to the events were incorporated into the project. These sources were accessed via hyperlinks found on the websites and include presentations, blog posts, related articles, and audiovisual content, such as videos.

While every effort has been made to ensure the dataset is comprehensive within the scope of the project, it does not claim to be exhaustive or definitive. Instead, it serves as a solid foundation for both the current and future analyses.

## TEI Encoding of Lecture Series

### ***Hierarchical Organization: Series, Terms, and Lectures***

All lecture series are recorded in the <listEvent> element, which is located within <body>, a sub-element of <text>. To accurately reflect the inherent structure of lecture series, the XML is organized hierarchically. The term *lecture series* implies a three-tiered structure:

- The overarching series, representing the general lecture program.
- Individual editions or rounds of a series, typically aligned with academic semesters or other specific time periods.
- Individual lectures, which form the lowest hierarchical level, with most information.

To represent this hierarchy, the following approach is used:

Each lecture series is recorded within an `<event>` element, with the *type* attribute set to the value *lecture-series*. Additionally, the *where* attribute references the ID of the location where the series is hosted:

```
<event type="lecture-series"
  where="#rostock">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">Digital Humanities im Fokus: Methoden, Anwen-
  dungen und
    Perspektiven</eventName>
  <eventName xml:lang="en">Digital Humanities in Focus: Methods, Applicati-
  ons, and
    Perspectives</eventName>
</event>
```

The `<event>` element contains an `<eventName>` sub-element, which records the original name of the series. The *xml:lang* attribute specifies the language of the lecture series name. If official translations exist, multiple `<eventName>` elements may be listed sequentially, as can be seen above.

Each lecture series consists of at least one, but usually multiple `<event>` elements, each representing an instance of the lecture series, for instance, an academic term in which the series took place. These `<event>` elements include a *type* attribute with the value *lecture-series-term*, as well as the attributes *from* and *to* indicating the term's duration (year and month):

```
<event from="2023-04" to="2024-07"
  type="lecture-series-term">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">Sommersemester 2023</eventName>
  <ptr target="https://web.archive.org/web/20241114133706/https://
  www.germanistik.uni-rostock.de/forschung/digital-humanities/rosdh/
  ringvorlesung/2023/"
  type="programme"/>
</event>
```

If a consolidated program overview is available for a given term, a `<ptr>` element is included after the `<eventName>` element. The *type* attribute of `<ptr>` is set to the value *programme* to indicate its purpose.

After these term-level `<event>` elements, individual lectures are recorded, as explained in the following sections.

## **Encoding Individual Lectures**

A individual lecture is recorded as an `<event>` element with the attribute *type* (with the value *lecture*) and with the attribute *when*, which specifies the date of the event in the format year-month-day. The structure of the content within each `<event>` element remains consistent across all lectures. Therefore, it is described in the following subsections from top to bottom, using the example below:

```
<event type="lecture" when="2024-12-02">
  <eventName xml:lang="de">KI generiert Texte – Wie? und Warum? – Nachde
```

nken eines

Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaftlers</eventName>

<note type="abstract" xml:lang="de">

<p>Texte sind allgegenwärtig und es liegt nahe, Textproduktion zu automatisieren.

Texte können (über)lebenswichtig sein, daher ist ein Nachdenken darüber, wie Texte

funktionieren und was sie mit uns und wir mit ihnen machen, notwendig.

KI-generierte Texte verändern die Textwelt, ohne dass wir es notwendigerweise

bemerken. Die Perspektive der Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft kann auf

Punkte hinweisen, worüber nachzudenken lohnen könnte.</p>

<p>Hier knüpft der Vortrag des Informatikers Clemens Cap an. Er schildert, wie große

Sprachmodelle wie beispielsweise ChatGPT heute aufgebaut sind. Daraus ergeben sich

unmittelbar die derzeitigen Fähigkeiten und Grenzen solcher Systeme. Der Kreis zum

Vortrag von Wolfgang Sucharowski schließt sich nun, wenn wir erkennen, dass seine

Beobachtungen keine Spekulationen sondern unmittelbare Konsequenzen aus der

Architektur solcher Systeme sind.</p>

</note>

<note type="keywords">

<term corresp="#german-studies #computer-science" type="discipline"/>

<term corresp="https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/commenting https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/machineLearning" type="topic"/>

</note>

<note type="realization">

<term type="speech">in person</term>

<term type="audience">hybrid</term>

</note>

<ptr target="https://web.archive.org/web/20241210104406/https://www.germanistik.uni-rostock.de/forschung/digital-humanities/rosdh/ringvorlesung/2024-25/n/ki-generiert-texte-wie-und-warum-nachdenken-eines-informations-und-kommunikationswissenschaftlers-202261/" type="programme"/>

<ptr target="https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.14525161" type="slides"/>

<listPerson>

<person corresp="#cap\_clemens" role="speaker">

<name>

<roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>

```

</name>
<affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
</person>
<person corresp="#sucharowski_wolfgang"
role="speaker">
  <name>
    <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
  </name>
  <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
</person>
</listPerson>
<org corresp="#uni-rostock"
role="host-institution"/>
</event> [...]
<org corresp="#henny-krahmer_ulrike #alvares-freire_fernanda #renz_erik"
role="organizer"/>

```

## Titles and Abstracts

At the beginning of each entry, the lecture title is recorded using an `<eventName>` element. The language of the title is specified via the `xml:lang` attribute.

Directly below the title, the abstract of the lecture follows. This is captured within a `<note>` element, which is characterized by the `type` attribute set to the value `abstract`. Additionally, the `xml:lang` attribute specifies the language of the abstract.

```

<eventName xml:lang="de">KI generiert Texte - Wie? und Warum? - Nachde
nken eines
Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaftlers</eventName>
<note type="abstract" xml:lang="de">
  <p>Texte sind allgegenwärtig und es liegt nahe, Textproduktion zu automatis
ieren.
  Texte können (über)lebenswichtig sein, daher ist ein Nachdenken darüber, w
ie Texte
  funktionieren und was sie mit uns und wir mit ihnen machen, notwendig.
  KI-generierte Texte verändern die Textwelt, ohne dass wir es notwendigerwe
ise
  bemerken. Die Perspektive der Sprach- und Kommunikationswissenschaft ka
nn auf
  Punkte hinweisen, worüber nachzudenken lohnen könnte.</p>
  <p>Hier knüpft der Vortrag des Informatikers Clemens Cap an. Er schildert,
wie große
  Sprachmodelle wie beispielsweise ChatGPT heute aufgebaut sind. Daraus er
geben sich
  unmittelbar die derzeitigen Fähigkeiten und Grenzen solcher Systeme. Der
Kreis zum
  Vortrag von Wolfgang Sucharowski schließt sich nun, wenn wir erkennen, da

```

ss seine

Beobachtungen keine Spekulationen, sondern unmittelbare Konsequenzen aus der

Architektur solcher Systeme sind.</p>

</note>

As the example above already shows, the abstract text itself is recorded within one or more <p> elements. If a list is included within the abstract, a <list> element is used, with individual list items represented by <item> elements.

If the abstract contains formatting elements such as bold, italics, or hyperlinks, these are not explicitly marked up.

If an abstract is available, it is recorded within the <note type="abstract"> tag. If no abstract is provided, the content of the note is set to "not found":

<note type="abstract" xml:lang="en">not found</note>

## Keywords

Each recorded lecture is assigned keywords by the encoders to be able to analyze the distribution of disciplines, methods and topics across the lectures and lecture series. That is, the keywords are not collected from the websites of the lecture series but they are added by the editors of this data collection.

The keywords are stored inside of a <note> element, characterized by the attribute *type* with the value *keywords*. Within this <note> element, there are two <term> elements:

- One with <type="discipline">, specifying the academic discipline or disciplines covered by the talk.
- One with <type="topic">, indicating the topic or topics of the talk.

<note type="keywords">

<term corresp="#german-studies #computer-science"  
type="discipline"/>

<term corresp="https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/commenting https://  
vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/machineLearning"  
type="topic"/>

</note>

In case that there are more than one discipline or topic, they are collected in the attribute of the same <term> element. We opted for this (instead of using an individual <term> element for each keyword) to facilitate later processing of the data and for a more compact encoding of the information. For the disciplines, we use a pre-defined list that we created on our own. For the topics, the *Taxonomy of Digital Research Activities in the Humanities* (TaDiRAH) is used. Detailed information about TaDiRAH can be found at <https://vocabs.dariah.eu/tadirah/en/>.

Both discipline and topic assignments are based on the lecture content. This classification relies on the abstract and title of the lecture. Since every lecture has a title but not necessarily an abstract, classification is always possible. However, a longer title or the presence of an abstract allows for a more

precise categorization.

## Realization (Lecture Modality)

The lecture modality is recorded in the `<note type="realization">` tag, specifying whether the lecture was held in person, hybrid, or online. The `<note>` element contains two `<term>` sub-elements that define the modality separately for speakers and audience members. These `<term>` elements use the *type* attribute to distinguish between the modality of the speech and of the audience:

- `<term type="speech">`: Describes how the speakers delivered the lecture.
- `<term type="audience">`: Describes how the audience attended the lecture.

```
<note type="realization">  
  <term type="speech">in person</term>  
  <term type="audience">hybrid</term>  
</note>
```

The values for these elements are standardized to ensure consistency in data representation. The possible values are:

- *in person*: All participants (speakers or audience) were physically present at the lecture venue.
- *hybrid*: At least one participant (speaker or audience member) joined remotely, while others were present in person.
- *online*: All participants attended virtually; no one was physically present at the venue.

If a lecture was canceled, a fourth value, *canceled*, is used. In this case, as shown in the example below, the `<term type="audience">` tag is omitted since no audience attended:

*canceled*

## Speakers, Titles, and Affiliation

The speakers of a lecture are recorded in a `<listPerson>` element. Each speaker is described using a `<person>` element with a *corresp* attribute that links to the corresponding person entry in the TEI header. The academic title (if provided) is stored within a `<roleName type="title">` element inside of the `<name>` element. The speaker's affiliation is captured within an `<affiliation>` element, referencing the corresponding institution, which is encoded in the TEI header. The information about the speakers, their affiliations, and the institutions is encoded in two places for the following reasons: on the one hand, we aim to have a centralized list of people and institutions in the TEI header, to which we can refer from individual events. On the other hand, the affiliations of people can change over time and the same is true for their titles. One person might not have a title at the moment of one event, but might have a title at another event later on, for instance, if someone completed his or her

PhD. Therefore, information about the current affiliation of a speaker at the moment of the event and about the current title that a person has when the event takes place is encoded directly inside of the individual event.

```
<listPerson>
  <person corresp="#cap_clemens"
    role="speaker">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
    </name>
    <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
  </person>
  <person corresp="#sucharowski_wolfgang"
    role="speaker">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">Prof. Dr.</roleName>
    </name>
    <affiliation corresp="#uni-rostock"/>
  </person>
</listPerson>
```

The titles of the speaker(s) are recorded according to the information provided in the lecture program, supporting materials (slides, videos, or blog posts), or a short biography. Common academic titles include:

- Dr. / Dr.-Ing. / PhD
- PD (Priv.-Doz.)
- Asst. Prof. / Assoc. Prof. / Jun.-Prof. / Prof. (Univ.-Prof.)

These titles are standardized. For instance, "Univ.-Prof." is simplified to "Prof.", and variations in spelling (e.g., "PhD" and "Ph.D.") are standardized.

Academic degrees such as *Bakkalaureus Artium* / *Bachelor of Arts* (B.A.) and *Magister Artium* / *Master of Arts* (M.A.) are not recorded, as they are typically not included in the program. Similarly, if no title is available, the value *not found* is used:

```
<listPerson>
  <person corresp="#theise_antje"
    role="speaker">
    <name>
      <roleName type="title">not found</roleName>
    </name>
    <affiliation corresp="#ub-rostock"/>
  </person>
</listPerson>
```

## Hosts and Organizers

Hosts are recorded at the end of the individual lecture entry to indicate which organizations were responsible for hosting the lecture, i.e., those that invited the speaker(s). The host institution is specified with an `<org>` element that

includes the attribute *role* with the standardized value *host-institution*. The *corresp* attribute references the corresponding organization entry in the TEI header. This value is recorded independently of the lecture modality (i.e., in presence, hybrid, or online).

```
<org corresp="#uni-rostock"
  role="host-institution"/>
```

As mentioned above, information about the hosting institutions concludes the section for an individual lecture. However, the final element within a lecture series term is the information about the organizers of the term. This information is stored within an `<org>` element with the attribute *role* and the standardized value *organizer*.

```
<org corresp="#henny-krahmer_ulrike #alvares-freire_fernanda #renz_erik"
  role="organizer"/>
```

Unlike host institutions, which are organizations, organizers are recorded as individual persons, as can be seen in the example above. It is possible for an organizer to also be a speaker in another lecture series or even in their own series.

Since organizational responsibility can change from term to term, it is considered appropriate to record this information at this level rather than for the entire series.

## Creating IDs

The dataset assigns unique IDs to persons, organizations, and locations, which are consistently stored in the *xml:id* attribute. The following aspects must be considered when creating IDs:

- Lowercase only: All IDs are written exclusively in lowercase.
- No numbers: Numbers are not used in IDs.
- Latin script only: The Latin script is consistently applied.
- No diacritical marks: Diacritical marks (e.g., ä, ö, ü, â, ê, î) are completely removed or replaced with corresponding transliterations (e.g., ä → ae, ö → oe, è → e).

Additional considerations include:

- Standardized prefixes: Certain IDs, such as those for universities, always begin with a fixed prefix (e.g., *uni-* for universities, *fh-* for universities of applied sciences).
- Use of hyphens and underscores: Two types of separators are used in the dataset:
  - Underscores (`_`) are used exclusively for person IDs, separating the surname from the given name.
  - Hyphens (`-`) are used for organizations and locations to separate individual name components (e.g., multi-word city names). In person IDs, hyphens are used to connect multiple given names or multiple surnames.



## **Capturing Language**

All collected information is recorded exclusively in the languages in which it appears on the respective websites. Each element of a lecture event that contains textual information in a certain language is marked with the attribute *xml:lang*, specifying the corresponding language value, such as *en* for English or *de* for German. No translations of content are produced.

The documentation of series, terms and lectures is mainly focused on English, Italian, German, Spanish, French and Portuguese, due to the language knowledge of the collaborators in this project. Other languages can be included, especially when it comes to recording the names of organizations or places. By default, these informations are documented in the language in which they originally emerged, which may differ from the respective national language.

In some cases, a title may include multiple languages, whether for stylistic reasons or because it contains a key term discussed in the lecture or an introductory quotation. In such instances, only the primary language of the title is recorded, while additional languages are not documented, as shown in the following example:

```
<eventName xml:lang="en">Le chemin de l'image in Renaissance Lyon: digital tools for the study of early modern illustrations</eventName>
<note type="abstract" xml:lang="en">
  <p>The talk will focus on the study of digital collections of early modern printed books and on the implementation of the Imagematching software in cooperation with the Visual Geometry Group of Department of Engineering Science at University of Oxford. In the research project The Early Modern Illustrated Book in Lyon (Equipex Biblissima/Ca' Foscari), the art historian Barbara Tramelli developed a new methodology for the study of book illustrations, using and implementing for her research Renaissance images two digital tools: [...]</p>
</note>
```

In such cases, the primary language of the element must be identified and recorded. In the example above, this would be English. The primary language can often be determined by identifying which part of the content conveys the core subject matter rather than serving a decorative or stylistic function. For titles, another useful indicator is the language of the accompanying abstract, if available.

## **Capturing Links**

In order to ensure the long-term accessibility and reliability of information, we secure all relevant sources via links, which are then archived using the

Wayback Machine from the Internet Archive (<https://web.archive.org/>). This archiving process applies to all links, except for DOI links, which are permanent by definition and do not require additional archiving. However, links that lead to videos, such as those on YouTube, are not archived because archiving by the Wayback Machine is not possible in this case.

All links within the dataset are encoded using the <ptr> (pointer) element. Within this element, the *type* attribute is used to specify the exact role of the link, as seen in the following examples:

```
<ptr target="https://web.archive.org/web/20230609113732/https://  
www.unive.it/data/33113/2/38661"  
type="programme"/>  
<ptr target="https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.7798685"  
type="slides"/>  
<ptr target="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=itVMXEEKZFQ"  
type="video"/>  
<ptr target="https://doi.org/10.58079/o57z"  
type="blogpost"/>
```

The values for the *type* attribute are as follows:

- *programme*: Refers to a complete programme for a semester or event series, or to a dedicated page for a specific lecture.
- *slides*: Points to presentation slides, such as PDFs or PowerPoint files.
- *video*: Links to a video recording of the lecture, including the presentation and possibly the discussion. These links are not archived.
- *blogpost*: Directs to a blog post discussing the lecture, potentially featuring parts of the presentation, speaker information, or related images.

It is important to highlight that we only capture links that directly originate from the lecture series' website. While further research to gather additional sources is possible, it has not been consistently carried out.

## **Capturing Organizations**

Organizations involved in Digital Humanities lecture series are divided into two main roles: the affiliation of the (invited) speaker and the hosting venue.

In most cases, organizations are listed at the level of entire universities, research institutions, or cultural institutions. Specific departments or institutes within these organizations, where speakers may be affiliated, are not captured in the data. E.g. if an affiliation to the Institute of German Studies at the University of Rostock is mentioned in a program, only the University of Rostock is encoded.

Each organization is represented by a separate entry within the <particDesc> element, found under <listOrg>. The <org> sub-element defines the organization and is assigned a unique ID through the *xml:id* attribute. This ID is used throughout the dataset to ensure consistent referencing. Additionally, the *type* attribute within the <org> element is employed to specify the

organization's precise role. Available values for the *type* attribute include:

- *university*: for universities and universities of applied sciences
- *research\_institution*: for private or public institutions that conduct research
- *company*: for companies or private sector organizations
- *glam*: for galleries, libraries, archives, museums; generally, all cultural and memory institutions
- *other*: we use this when none of the categories listed above apply, for example in the case of radio stations or newspapers.

As can be seen in the example below, the "Università di Bologna" is represented as an organization with the ID *uni-bologna*. The name of the organization is presented in the original language (Italian, in this case), and an external Wikidata identifier is included within the `<idno>` element.

```
<org type="university" xml:id="uni-bologna">
  <name xml:lang="it">Università di Bologna</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q131262</idno>
  <place corresp="#bologna"/>
</org>
```

## Universities

As described above, all organizations, including all university entries, are assigned an ID. Unlike those of other organizations, university IDs always begin with *uni-* or *fh-* followed by a unique part, typically derived from the name or location of the institution. For example, the University of Rostock is captured as follows:

```
<org type="university" xml:id="uni-rostock">
  <name xml:lang="de">Universität Rostock</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q159895</idno>
  <place corresp="#rostock"/>
</org>
```

In order to maintain clarity and allow for future adjustments, the names of universities are standardized. For instance, "Julius-Maximilians-Universität Würzburg" is shortened to "Universität Würzburg", and the corresponding ID becomes *uni-wuerzburg*:

```
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-wuerzburg">
  <name xml:lang="de">Universität Würzburg</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q161976</idno>
  <place corresp="#wuerzburg"/>
</org>
```

This simplification also reduces the need for updates when a university undergoes rebranding or changes its name, such as in the case of the recent shift in Münster from "Westfälische Wilhelms-Universität Münster" to "Universität Münster".

When multiple universities exist within the same city, additional distinctions

are added to the ID to avoid confusion. These distinctions are appended to the base ID formed by the university's type and location. For example, in London, where several institutions exist, their IDs are distinguished as follows:

```
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-london-city">
  <name xml:lang="en">City, University of London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q1094046</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-london-ucl">
  <name xml:lang="en">University College London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q193196</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-london-kcl">
  <name xml:lang="en">King's College London</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q245247</idno>
  <place corresp="#london"/>
</org>
```

In contrast, Berlin presents another situation, as the German naming convention is that distinctions should precede the city name, resulting in IDs such as:

```
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-fu-berlin">
  <name xml:lang="de">Freie Universität Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q153006</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-hu-berlin">
  <name xml:lang="de">Humboldt-Universität zu Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q152087</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
<org type="university"
xml:id="uni-tu-berlin">
  <name xml:lang="de">Technische Universität Berlin</name>
  <idno type="wikidata">https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q51985</idno>
  <place corresp="#berlin"/>
</org>
```

As with all organizations in the dataset, each university is assigned an external identifier, referenced through the `<idno>` element, which refers to the university's Wikidata entry.

## Research Institutions

## TEI Specifications

### *Elements*

#### **<TEI>**

**<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple **<TEI>** elements may be combined within a **<TEI>** (or **<teiCorpus>**) element. [[4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

#### **Module**

#### **Attributes**

#### textstructure

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

#### version

specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

<b>Status</b>	Optional
<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.version
<b>Note</b>	Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the

absence  
of a more  
precise  
associati  
on  
provided  
by the  
*source*  
attribute  
on the  
associate  
d  
<schema  
Spec>.

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

**Note**

textstructure: TEI  
header: *teiHeader*  
textstructure: TEI text  
As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except <egXML>) this element is in the TEI namespace (see [5.7.2. Namespaces](#)). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0> as the value of the XML namespace declaration (*xmlns*), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document. For example: <TEI version="4.8.1" *xml:lang*="it" *xmlns*="<http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0>">.

**Example**

```
<TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://
www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document I
maginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P
2, this is the P5
          version using a namespace.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
```

## Example

```
<p>No source: this is an original wo
rk.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<text>
<body>
<p>This is about the shortest TEI do
cument imaginable.</p>
</body>
</text>
</TEI>
<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://
www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
<titleStmt>
<title>A TEI Document containing f
our page images </title>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
<p>Unpublished demonstration file.
</p>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
<p>No source: this is an original wo
rk.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<facsimile>
<graphic url="page1.png"/>
<graphic url="page2.png"/>
<graphic url="page3.png"/>
<graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
</TEI>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
<sequence>
<elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
<alternate>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.resource"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
s="1"/>
<elementRef key="TEI"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
```



```

s="0"/>
</sequence>
<elementRef key="TEI"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element TEI
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  attribute version { text }?,
  ( tei_teiHeader, ( ( tei_model.resourc
e+, tei_TEI* ) | tei_TEI+ ) )
}

```

## <affiliation>

**<affiliation>** (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [[16.2.2. The Participant Description](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source

- *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - type
  - @subtype

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**Derived from**

**Status** Optional

	<p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.e numerate d</p> <p><b>Sample values</b> sponsor include: recommend end</p> <p>discredit</p> <p>pledged</p>
<b>Member of</b>	model.addressLike
<b>Contained by</b>	model.persStateLike core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence namesdates: affiliation country eventName forename gender nameLink person placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Note</b>	If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element.
<b>Example</b>	<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US <name type="org">National Endowment for the Humanities</name> </affiliation>
<b>Example</b>	This example indicates that the person was affiliated with the Australian Journalists Association at some point between the dates listed. <affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the <orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName>

## Example

</affiliation>

This example indicates that the person was affiliated with Mount Holyoke College throughout the entire span of the date range listed.

<affiliation from="1902-01-01" to="1906-01-01">Was an assistant professor at Mount Holyoke College.</affiliation>

## Content model

<content>

<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>

## Schema Declaration

element affiliation

```
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,  
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,  
  tei_att.naming.attributes,  
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,  
  attribute type { text }?,  
  tei_macro.phraseSeq  
}
```

## <availability>

**<availability>** (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

header

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf
  - @next
  - @prev
  - @exclude

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@select</i></li> <li>• att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@rend</i></li> <li>• <i>@style</i></li> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@default</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
status	<p>(status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated</p> <p><b>Legal values are:</b> free (free) the text is freely available.</p> <p><b>unknown</b> (unknown) the status of the text is unknown.</p> <p><b>restricted</b> (restricted)</p>

d)  
the  
text  
is  
not  
freel  
y  
avail  
able.

**Member of**

**Contained by**

**May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

model.biblPart  
model.publicationStmtPart.detail  
core: bibl  
header: publicationStmt  
core: p  
header: licence  
A consistent format should be adopted

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research p
urposes only.</p>
</availability>
```

```
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
```

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the
publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

**Example**

```
<availability>
  <licence target="http://
opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The Unive
rsity of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, fre
e of charge, to any person obtaining a
copy
  of this software and associated doc
umentation files (the "Software"), to de
al
  in the Software without restriction,
including without limitation the rights
to use, copy, modify, merge, publish,
distribute, sublicense, and/or sell
  copies of the Software, and to perm
it persons to whom the Software is
  furnished to do so, subject to the fol
```

lowing conditions:</p>

<p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in

all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>

<p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR

IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,

FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE

AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER

LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,

OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN

THE SOFTWARE.</p>

</licence>

</availability>

## Content model

<content>

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">

<classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>

<classRef key="model.pLike"/>

</alternate>

</content>

## Schema Declaration

element availability

{

tei\_att.global.attributes,

tei\_att.declarable.attributes,

attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,

( tei\_model.availabilityPart | tei\_model.pLike )+

}

## <bibl>

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

[[3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](#) [2.2.7. The Source Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*
- att.docStatus
  - *@status*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

### Member of

### Contained by

model.biblLike model.biblPart

core: bibl desc item note p title

header: licence sourceDesc taxonomy



**May contain**

namesdates: event org person place  
textstructure: body  
core: bibl date editor name note ptr  
pubPlace publisher respStmt term title  
header: availability idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

Contains *phrase-level* elements,  
together with any combination of  
elements from the model.biblPart class

**Example**

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Fe  
minist Companion to Literature in Engl  
ish (Yale,  
1990)</bibl>
```

**Example**

```
<bibl>  
  <title level="a">The Interesting story  
of the Children in the Wood</title>. In  
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>,  
<title>The Penny Histories</title>.  
<publisher>OUP</publisher>  
<date>1968</date>.  
</bibl>
```

**Example**

```
<bibl subtype="book_chapter" type=""  
article"  
xml:id="carlin_2003">  
  <author>  
    <name>  
      <surname>Carlin</surname>  
      (<forename>Claire</  
forename>)</name>  
    </author>,  
    <title level="a">The Staging of Impot  
ence : France's last  
congrès</title> dans  
<bibl type="monogr">  
  <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : s  
tudies in honor of Ronald W.  
Tobin</title>, éd.  
  <editor>  
    <name>  
      <forename>Claire</forename>  
      <surname>Carlin</surname>  
    </name>  
  </editor> et  
</editor>
```

```

<name>
  <forename>Kathleen</forename>
  <surname>Wine</surname>
</name>
</editor>,
<pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</
pubPlace>,
<publisher>Rookwood Press</
publisher>,
<date when="2003">2003</date>.
</bibl>
</bibl>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
    <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element bibl
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | tei_model.gLike
    | tei_model.highlighted
    | tei_model.pPart.data
    | tei_model.pPart.edit
    | tei_model.segLike
    | tei_model.ptrLike
    | tei_model.biblPart
    | tei_model.global
  )
}

```

```
)*
}
```

## <body>

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [[4. Default Text Structure](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.declaring
  - *@decls*

### Contained by

### May contain

textstructure: text

core: bibl desc list note p

namesdates: listEvent listOrg

listPerson listPlace

### Example

<body>

<l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>

<l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>

<l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gi huaes</l>

<l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>

<l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>

<l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>

```

    <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uar
d</l>
    <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
    <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
    <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istu
d carmen.</trailer>
</body>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
"
minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded
"

```

```

        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/
>
    </alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded
"
        minOccurs="1">
        <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOcc
urs="1">
            <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
            <classRef key="model.common"/>
        </alternate>
        <classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccu
rs="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0">
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
            minOccurs="0">
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike
"/>
        </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
            minOccurs="0">
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
            <classRef key="model.divGenLike
"/>
        </alternate>
    </sequence>
    </alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"

```

```

minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element body
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.global*,
    ( ( tei_model.divTop, ( tei_model.global
| tei_model.divTop )* )? ),
    (
      ( tei_model.divGenLike, ( tei_model.global
| tei_model.divGenLike )* )?
    ),
    (
      (
        ( tei_model.divLike, ( tei_model.global
| tei_model.divGenLike )* )+
      )
      | (
        (
          tei_model.div1Like,
          ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )*
        )+
      )
      | (
        ( ( ( schemaSpec | tei_model.common ), tei_model.global* )+ ),
        (
          (
            (
              tei_model.divLike,
              ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )*
            )+
          )
          | (
            (
              tei_model.div1Like,

```

```

        ( tei_model.global | tei_mo
del.divGenLike )*
    )+
    )
    )?
    )
    ),
    ( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.
global* )* )
    )
}

```

## <catDesc>

**<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>.

[\[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration\]](#)

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

header: category  
core: date name ptr term title

## Example Example

```
header: idno
namesdates: affiliation country
eventName forename nameLink
placeName roleName surname
character data
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issu
es</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="enter
tain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="in
form"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
/>
    <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/
>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element catDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
model.catDescPart )*
}
```

## <category>

**<category>** (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

[\[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration\]](#)



## Module Attributes

### Contained by May contain

### Example

### Example

### Example

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datcat
  - *@datcat*
  - *@valueDatcat*
  - *@targetDatcat*

header: category taxonomy

core: desc

header: catDesc category

```
<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</
catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura pi
```

```

    ękna</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</
catDesc>
    <category xml:id="LPROSE">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</
catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</
catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</
catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</
catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</
catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</
catDesc>
    </category>
</category>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="catDesc"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
        <elementRef key="equiv"/>
        <elementRef key="gloss"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="category"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element category
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.datcat.attributes,
  (

```

```

        ( tei_catDesc+ | ( tei_model.descLi
ke | equiv | gloss )* ),
        tei_category*
    )
}

```

## <classDecl>

**<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](#) [2.3. The Encoding Description](#)]

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**  
**Example**

```

model.encodingDescPart
header: encodingDesc
header: taxonomy
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject H
eadings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">

```

```

    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States — Politics and
government —
    Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
</keywords>
</textClass>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <elementRef key="taxonomy"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element classDecl { tei_att.global.attri
butes, tei_taxonomy+ }

```

## <country>

**<country>** (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [[14.2.3. Place Names](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc

- *@generatedBy*
- att.dataable
  - *@period*
  - att.dataable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.dataable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.dataable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.placeNamePart  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
 title  
 header: catDesc licence  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink org place placeName  
 roleName surname  
 core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data

**May contain**

**Note**

The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.

**Example**

```
<country key="DK">Denmark</country>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element country
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**<date>**

**<date>** (date) contains a date in any format. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) [2.6. The Revision Description](#) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#) [16.2.3. The Setting Description](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

**Module****Attributes**

- core
  - att.global
    - @xml:id
    - @n
    - @xml:lang
    - @xml:base
    - @xml:space
  - att.global.linking
    - @corresp
    - @synch
    - @sameAs
    - @copyOf
    - @next
    - @prev
    - @exclude
    - @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - @rend
    - @style
    - @rendition
  - att.global.responsibility

- *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.calendarSystem
  - *@calendar*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@precision*
  - *@scope*
  - att.ranging
    - *@atLeast*
    - *@atMost*
    - *@min*
    - *@max*
    - *@confidence*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @type</li> <li>• @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.dateLike
<b>Contained by</b>	model.publicationStmtPart.detail core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence publicationStmt namesdates: affiliation country eventName forename gender nameLink placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Example</b>	<date when="1980-02">early Februar y 1980</date>
<b>Example</b>	Given on the <date when="1977-06- 12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Th ousand Nine Hundred and Seventy- seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of th e University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
<b>Example</b>	<date when="1990-09">September 19 90</date>
<b>Content model</b>	<content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	element date { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.calendarSystem.attributes, tei_att.canonical.attributes, 



```

    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.dataable.attributes,
    tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.p
hrase | tei_model.global )*
}

```

## <desc>

**<desc>** (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [[23.4.1. Description of Components](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

#### core

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - type
  - @subtype

#### type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any

convenient  
classification  
scheme or  
typology.  
**Derived** att.typed  
**from**  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerated  
**Suggest deprecated**  
**ed** **ionInfo**  
**values** (dep  
**include:** recat  
ion  
infor  
mati  
on)  
This  
elem  
ent  
desc  
ribes  
why  
or  
how  
its  
pare  
nt  
elem  
ent  
is  
bein  
g  
depr  
ecat  
ed,  
typic  
ally  
inclu  
ding  
reco  
mme  
ndati  
ons  
for  
alter

nate  
enco  
ding.

```
<dataSpec ident="
teidata.point"
  module="tei"
  validUntil="2050-
02-25">
  <desc type="depr
ecationInfo"
    versionDate="201
8-09-14"
    xml:lang="en">S
everal standards b
odies, including NI
ST in the USA,
    strongly recomm
end against ending
the representation
of a number
    with a decimal po
int. So instead of <
q>3.</q> use eithe
r <q>3</q>
    or <q>3.0</
q>.</desc>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.descLike model.labelLike  
core: desc item list note p title  
header: category licence taxonomy  
namesdates: event listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace org place  
textstructure: body

**May contain**

core: bibl date desc list name ptr term  
title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

When used in a specification element  
such as <elementSpec>, TEI  
convention requires that this be  
expressed as a finite clause, begining  
with an active verb.

## Example

Example of a <desc> element inside a documentation element.

```
<dataSpec ident="teidata.point"
  module="tei">
  <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
    xml:lang="en">defines the data type
used to express a point in cartesian sp
ace.</desc>
  <content>
    <dataRef name="token"
      restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-
9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" />
    </content>
  <!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

## Example

Example of a <desc> element in a non-documentation element.

```
<place xml:id="KERG2">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</
placeName>
  <!-- ... -->
  <terrain>
    <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
  </terrain>
  <!-- ... -->
</place>
```

## Schematron

A <desc> with a *type* of *deprecationInfo* should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.

```
<sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq
'deprecationInfo']">
  <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Info
rmation about a deprecation should
only be present in a specification
element that is being deprecated: that
is, only an element that has a
@validUntil attribute should have a
child <desc
type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert
> </sch:rule>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedConte
nt"/>
```

</content>

## Schema Declaration

```
element desc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,
  tei_macro.limitedContent
}
```

## <editor>

**<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

- core
  - att.global
    - *@xml:id*
    - *@n*
    - *@xml:lang*
    - *@xml:base*
    - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
  - att.datable
    - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*

- *@notAfter-custom*
- *@from-custom*
- *@to-custom*
- *@datingPoint*
- *@datingMethod*
- att.dataable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.dataable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**

**May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

**Content model**

model.respLike

core: bibl

header: titleStmt

core: date name note ptr term title

header: idno

namesdates: affiliation country

eventName forename nameLink

placeName roleName surname

character data

A consistent format should be adopted.

Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

```
<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron
Van den Branden</editor>
```

```
<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John W
alsh</editor>
```

```
<editor role="Managing_Editor">Ann
e Baillot</editor>
```

```
<content>
```

```
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```

</content>

## Schema Declaration

```
element editor
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <encodingDesc>

**<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [[2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**

model.teiHeaderPart  
header: teiHeader  
core: p  
header: classDecl

### Example

```
<encodingDesc>
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical
information only. All
```

hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.

## Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.encodingDesc
Part"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_model.encodingDescPart | tei_model.pLike )+
}
```

## <event>

**<event>** (event) contains data relating to anything of significance that happens in time. [[14.3.1. Basic Principles](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
namespaces
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev
      • @exclude
      • @select
    • att.global.rendition
      • @rend
      • @style
      • @rendition
    • att.global.responsibility
```



- *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.locatable
  - *@where*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**

**May contain**

model.eventLike  
 namesdates: event listEvent org  
 person place  
 core: bibl desc note p ptr  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: event eventName

## Example

```
listEvent listPerson listPlace org
person place
<listEvent>
  <event when="1618-05-23" where="
#Prague"
  xml:id="SecondDefPrague">
    <eventName>1618 Defenestration of
Prague</eventName>
    <idno>https://www.wikidata.org/
wiki/Q13365740</idno>
    <listPerson type="defenstrated">
      <person>
        <persName>Jaroslav Bořita z Marti
nic</persName>
        <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/116810998</idno>
      </person>
      <person>
        <persName>Vilém Slavata z Chlum
u a Košumberka</persName>
        <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/1018376615</idno>
      </person>
      <person>
        <persName>Filip Fabricius</
persName>
        <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/133946118</idno>
      </person>
    </listPerson>
    <place xml:id="Prague">
      <placeName>Prague</placeName>
    </place>
  </event>
  <event from="1618" to="1648"
  xml:id="ThirtyYearsWar">
    <eventName>Thirty Years' War</
eventName>
    <idno>https://www.wikidata.org/
wiki/Q2487</idno>
    <event when="1643-03-19" where="
#Rocroi"
    xml:id="BattleofRocroi">
      <eventName>Battle of Rocroi</
eventName>
      <idno type="Wikidata">https://
www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q728480</
idno>
```

## Example

```
<idno type="GND">https://d-  
nb.info/gnd/4202901-6</idno>  
<place xml:id="Rocroi">  
  <placeName>Rocroi</placeName>  
  <location>  
    <geo decls="#WGS">49.926111 4.  
522222</geo>  
  </location>  
</place>  
</event>  
</event>  
</listEvent>  
<person>  
  <event type="mat" when="1972-10-  
12">  
    <label>matriculation</label>  
  </event>  
  <event type="grad" when="1975-06-  
23">  
    <label>graduation</label>  
  </event>  
</person>
```

## Content model

```
<content>  
  <sequence>  
    <elementRef key="idno"  
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
="0"/>  
    <classRef key="model.headLike"  
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
="0"/>  
    <alternate>  
      <classRef key="model.pLike"  
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur  
s="1"/>  
      <classRef key="model.labelLike"  
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur  
s="1"/>  
      <elementRef key="eventName"  
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur  
s="1"/>  
    </alternate>  
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"  
      minOccurs="0">  
      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>  
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>  
      <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>  
      <elementRef key="link"/>  
    </alternate>
```

```

    <elementRef key="idno"/>
    <elementRef key="ptr"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.eventLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
    ="0"/>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.personLike"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listPerson"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.placeLike"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listPlace"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.objectLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
    ="0"/>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="relation" maxOcc
    urs="1"
      minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element event
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.locatable.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_idno*,
    tei_model.headLike*,
    ( tei_model.pLike+ | tei_model.labe

```

```

lLike+ | tei_eventName+ ),
(
    tei_model.noteLike
  | tei_model.biblLike
  | linkGrp
  | link
  | tei_idno
  | tei_ptr
)*,
tei_model.eventLike*,
( tei_model.personLike | tei_listPers
on )*,
( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace
)*,
tei_model.objectLike*,
( relation | listRelation )*
)
}

```

## <eventName>

**<eventName>** (name of an event) contains a proper noun or noun phrase used to refer to an event. [[14.2.4. Event Names](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.nameLike  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
 title  
 header: catDesc licence  
 namesdates: affiliation country event  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink org placeName roleName  
 surname  
 core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno

**May contain**

## Example

```
namesdates: affiliation country
eventName forename nameLink
placeName roleName surname
character data
<listEvent>
  <event from="1939-09-01" to="1945-
09-02">
    <eventName xml:lang="de">Zweiter
Weltkrieg</eventName>
    <eventName xml:lang="en">World W
ar II</eventName>
    <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/4079167-1</idno>
    <idno type="Wikidata">https://
www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q362</idno>
    <event from="1939-09-01" to="1939-
10-06"
      xml:id="UeberfallAufPolen">
        <eventName xml:lang="de">Überfal
l auf Polen</eventName>
        <eventName xml:lang="en">Invasio
n of Poland</eventName>
        <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/4175002-0</idno>
        <idno type="LOC">https://
id.loc.gov/authorities/sh85148341</
idno>
        <listPlace type="affected">
          <place>
            <placeName xml:lang="pl">Gdańs
k</placeName>
            <location>
              <geo>54.350556 18.652778</
geo>
            </location>
          </place>
        </listPlace>
      </event>
    <event from="1941-06-22" to="1945-
05-09">
      <eventName xml:lang="de">Deutsc
h-Sowjetischer Krieg</eventName>
      <eventName xml:lang="ru">Велика
я Отечественная война</
eventName>
      <idno type="GND">https://d-
nb.info/gnd/4076906-9</idno>
      <idno type="Wikidata">https://
```

### Example

### Example

[www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q189266](http://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Q189266)</idno>  
</event>  
</event>  
</listEvent>  
<p>On <date when="1719-03-19">Monday</date>, <rs type="person">she</rs> was writing about the <eventName ref="#SecondDefPrague">1618 Defenestration of Prague</eventName> which initiated the <rs ref="#ThirtyYearsWar" type="event">long war</rs>.</p>  
<event from="2019-09-16" to="2019-09-20" xml:id="tei2019graz">  
<eventName type="full">TEI 2019: What is text, really? TEI and beyond</eventName>  
<eventName type="short">TEI 2019</eventName>  
<note> The abstract leading to the <gi>eventName</gi> element is available at <ref target="https://gams.uni-graz.at/o:tei2019.141">https://gams.uni-graz.at/o:tei2019.141</ref>.  
Other related documents are available through <ref target="https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019">https://gams.uni-graz.at/tei2019</ref>, as well as in the  
<ref target="https://zenodo.org/communities/tei2019">TEI 2019 Zenodo community</ref>.  
</note>  
<listPerson type="LocalOrganizers">  
<person>  
<persName>  
<surname>Raunig</surname>  
<forename>Elisabeth</forename>  
</persName>  
</person>  
<person>  
<persName>  
<surname>Scholger</surname>  
<forename>Martina</forename>  
</persName>  
</person>



```

<person>
  <persName>
    <surname>Scholger</surname>
    <forename>Walter</forename>
  </persName>
</person>
<person>
  <persName>
    <surname>Steiner</surname>
    <forename>Elisabeth</forename>
  </persName>
</person>
<person>
  <persName>
    <surname>Vogeler</surname>
    <forename>Georg</forename>
  </persName>
</person>
</listPerson>
<place xml:lang="de">
  <placeName>Universität Graz</
placeName>
  <location>
    <address>
      <addrLine>ReSoWi Gebäude</
addrLine>
      <addrLine>Universitätsstraße 15</
addrLine>
      <postCode>8010</postCode>
      <settlement>Graz</settlement>
      <country>Österreich</country>
    </address>
    <geo>15.451651587656 47.0782151
12534</geo>
  </location>
</place>
<listRelation>
  <relation active="#tei2019graz"
    name="P31_is_instance_of" passive=
"#AnnualTEIConference"
    ref="https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/
Property:P31" type="CRM"/>
</listRelation>
</event>

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

## Content model

## Schema Declaration

```
element eventName
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.personal.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

### <fileDesc>

**<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [[2.2. The File Description](#) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

header: teiHeader  
header: publicationStmt sourceDesc  
titleStmt

#### Note

The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an

electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

## Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
    >
      <elementRef key="seriesStmt" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <elementRef key="sourceDesc" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      tei_titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      tei_publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt*,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    tei_sourceDesc+
  )
}
```

### <forename>

**<forename>** (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name.  
[[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

```
namesdates
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.cmc
```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@generatedBy</i></li> <li>• att.personal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@full</i></li> <li>• <i>@sort</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@role</i></li> <li>• <i>@nymRef</i></li> <li>• att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@key</i></li> <li>• <i>@ref</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.persNamePart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence namesdates: affiliation country eventName forename gender nameLink org placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title header: idno namesdates: affiliation country eventName forename nameLink placeName roleName surname character data
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;persName&gt;   &lt;roleName&gt;Ex-President&lt;/ roleName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;George&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;surname&gt;Bush&lt;/surname&gt; &lt;/persName&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/&gt; &lt;/content&gt; </pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre> element forename {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.personal.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   tei_macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

## <gender>

**<gender>** (gender) specifies the gender identity of a person, persona, or character. [[14.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](#)]

**Module**

namesdates

**Attributes**

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@notAfter</i></li> <li>• <i>@from</i></li> <li>• <i>@to</i></li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@evidence</i></li> <li>• <i>@instant</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
value	<p>supplies a coded value for gender identity.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞</p> <p>occurrences of teidata .gender separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p>

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**

model.persStateLike  
namesdates: person  
core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age and sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts varies. The

normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety for purposes of interoperability or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail.

### Example

```
<gender value="W">woman</gender>
```

### Example

```
<gender value="NB">non-binary</gender>
```

### Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```
element gender
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  attribute value { list { + } }?,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <idno>

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [[14.3.1. Basic Principles](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*



- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - type
  - *@subtype*

type

categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number,

etc.

**Derived from** att.typed

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Suggested ISBN**

**ed** Inter  
**values** natio  
**include:** nal  
Stan  
dard  
Book  
Num  
ber:  
a 13-  
or (if  
assig  
ned  
prior  
to  
2007  
) 10-  
digit  
ident  
ifyin  
g  
num  
ber  
assig  
ned  
by  
the  
publi  
shin  
g  
indu  
stry  
to a  
publi  
shed  
book  
or  
simil  
ar  
item,

regis  
tere  
d  
with  
the  
[Inter  
natio  
nal  
ISB  
N  
Agen  
cy.](#)

**ISSN**

Inter  
natio  
nal  
Stan  
dard  
Seri  
al  
Num  
ber:  
an  
eight  
-digit  
num  
ber  
to  
uniq  
uely  
ident  
ify a  
seria  
l  
publi  
catio  
n.

**DOI**

Digit  
al  
Obje  
ct  
Iden  
tifier  
: a  
uniq  
ue

string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document

**URI**

Uniform Resource Identifier : a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of [RFC 3986](#)

**VIAF**

A data number

in  
the  
Virtu  
al  
Inter  
net  
Auth  
ority  
File  
assig  
ned  
to  
link  
diffe  
rent  
nam  
es in  
catal  
ogs  
arou  
nd  
the  
worl  
d for  
the  
same  
entit  
y.

# **ESTC**

Engli  
sh  
Shor  
t-  
Title  
Cata  
logu  
e  
num  
ber:  
an  
ident  
ifyin  
g  
num  
ber  
assig  
ned  
to a

document  
in  
English  
sh  
printed in  
the  
British  
Isles  
or  
North  
America  
before  
1801

.  
**OCLC**  
OCL  
C  
control  
number  
(record  
number)  
for  
the  
union  
catalog  
record in  
WorldCat  
, a  
union  
catalog  
for  
mem

ber  
libra  
ries  
in  
the  
Onli  
ne  
Com  
pute  
r  
Libr  
ary  
Cent  
er  
glob  
al  
coop  
erati  
ve.

**Member of**  
**Contained by**

model.nameLike model.personPart  
model.publicationStmtPart.detail  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title  
header: catDesc idno licence  
publicationStmt  
namesdates: affiliation country event  
eventName forename gender  
nameLink org person place placeName  
roleName surname

**May contain**

header: idno  
character data

**Note**

<idno> should be used for labels  
which identify an object or concept in  
a formal cataloguing system such as a  
database or an RDF store, or in a  
distributed system such as the World  
Wide Web. Some suggested values for  
*type* on <idno> are *ISBN*, *ISSN*, *DOI*,  
and *URI*.

**Example**

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://
```

```

www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</
idno>
<idno type="URI">http://
authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.5
37(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>

```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as `#sym`.

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element idno
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "V
IAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
  }?,
  ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_idno ) *
}

```

## <item>

**<item>** (item) contains one component of a list. [[3.8. Lists](#) [2.6. The Revision Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

### core

- att.global
- @xml:id



- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

core: list  
 core: bibl date desc list name note p  
 ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
 listPerson listPlace nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data  
 May contain simple prose or a  
 sequence of chunks.

**Note**

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label>

## Example

element, not *n*.

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element item
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

## <licence>

**<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
header
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
```

- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*
    - *@datingPoint*
    - *@datingMethod*
  - att.datable.iso
    - *@when-iso*
    - *@notBefore-iso*
    - *@notAfter-iso*
    - *@from-iso*
    - *@to-iso*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*

**Member of  
Contained by  
May contain**

model.availabilityPart

header: availability

core: bibl date desc list name note p

ptr term title

header: idno

namesdates: affiliation country

eventName forename listEvent listOrg

## Note

listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

## Example

```
<licence target="http://
www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-
NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence
: Creative Commons Attribution-Share
Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

## Example

```
<availability>
  <licence notBefore="2013-01-01"
    target="http://creativecommons.org/
licenses/by/3.0/">
    <p>The Creative Commons Attributio
n 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
    applies to this document.</p>
    <p>The licence was added on Januar
y 1, 2013.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/
>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element licence
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

## <list>

**<list>** (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [[3.8. Lists](#)]  
**Module** core

## Attributes

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf
  - @next
  - @prev
  - @exclude
  - @select
- att.global.rendition
  - @rend
  - @style
  - @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - @cert
  - @resp
- att.global.source
  - @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.sortable
  - @sortKey
- att.typed
  - type
  - @subtype

type

(type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

**Derived from**

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Suggest gloss**

**ed** (glosses)  
**values** s)  
**include:** each list item gloss

es  
some  
term  
or  
conc  
ept,  
whic  
h is  
give  
n by  
a  
<lab  
el>  
elem  
ent  
prec  
edin  
g the  
list  
item.

**index**

(inde  
x)  
each  
list  
item  
is an  
entr  
y in  
an  
inde  
x  
such  
as  
the  
alph  
abeti  
cal  
topic  
al  
inde  
x at  
the  
back  
of a  
print  
volu  
me.

**instructions**

(instruction)  
each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

**litany**

(litany)  
each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious

ritual.  
**syllogism**  
 (syll  
 ogis  
 m)  
 each  
 list  
 item  
 is  
 part  
 of an  
 argu  
 ment  
 consi  
 sting  
 of  
 two  
 or  
 more  
 prop  
 ositi  
 ons  
 and  
 a  
 final  
 conc  
 lusio  
 n  
 deriv  
 ed  
 from  
 them

**Note** Previous  
 versions  
 of these  
 Guideline  
 s  
 recomme  
 nded the  
 use of  
*type* on  
 <list> to  
 encode  
 the



rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows `<label>` tags to be omitted from lists tagged `<list`

*type="gl  
oss">;  
this is  
however  
a  
semantic  
error.*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.listLike  
core: desc item note p title  
header: licence sourceDesc  
textstructure: body

**May contain  
Note**

core: desc item note  
May contain an optional heading  
followed by a series of items, or a  
series of label and item pairs, the  
latter being optionally preceded by one  
or two specialized headings.

**Example**

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
  <list rend="bulleted">
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>
    <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>
```

**Example**

```
<list rend="bulleted" type="syllogism"
>
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</
item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</
item>
</list>
```

**Example**

```
<list rend="simple" type="litany">
  <item>God save us from drought.</
item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</
item>
  <item>God save us from wickedness i
n high places.</item>
  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>
```

**Example**

The following example treats the short  
numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal  
codes as lists of items. The text is from

an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
```

```
<head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
```

```
<list rend="numbered">
```

```
<item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with
```

```
the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over
```

```
eightpence.
```

```
<list rend="numbered">
```

```
<item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his
```

```
wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to
```

```
clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
```

```
<item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is
```

```
not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
```

```
<item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may
```

```
then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him
```

```
that he will desist for ever.</item>
```

```
<item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,
```

```
or to bring him back there.</item>
```

```
<item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,
```

```
whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who
```

```
supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>
```

</list>  
 </item>  
 <item n="2">Concerning lordless me  
 n. And we pronounced about these lord  
 less men, from whom  
     no justice can be obtained, that one  
 should order their kindred to fetch bac  
 k such a  
     person to justice and to find him a l  
 ord in public meeting.  
 <list rend="numbered">  
     <item n="2.1">And if they then will  
 not, or cannot, produce him on that ap  
 pointed day,  
         he is then to be a fugitive afterwa  
 rds, and he who encounters him is to st  
 rike him  
         down as a thief.</item>  
     <item n="2.2">And he who harbour  
 s him after that, is to pay for him with  
 his wergild  
         or to clear himself by an oath of t  
 hat amount.</item>  
 </list>  
 </item>  
 <item n="3">Concerning the refusal  
 of justice. The lord who refuses justice  
 and upholds  
     his guilty man, so that the king is ap  
 pealed to, is to repay the value of the g  
 oods and  
     120 shillings to the king; and he wh  
 o appeals to the king before he deman  
 ds justice as  
     often as he ought, is to pay the sam  
 e fine as the other would have done, if  
 he had  
     refused him justice.  
 <list rend="numbered">  
     <item n="3.1">And the lord who is  
 an accessory to a theft by his slave, an  
 d it becomes  
         known about him, is to forfeit the  
 slave and be liable to his wergild on th  
 e first  
         occasionp if he does it more often  
 , he is to be liable to pay all that he ow  
 ns.</item>

## Example

<item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been

an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</item>

</list>

</item>

<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to

a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is

afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>

</list>

</div1>

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they

confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards

inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy

Cross.

<list rend="simple">

<item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have

subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy

Cross.</item>

<item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with

the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>

<item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the

sign of the Holy Cross.</item>  
 <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the  
 sign of the Holy Cross.</item>  
 <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the sign of  
 the Holy Cross.</item>  
 <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item>  
 <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>  
 <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy  
 Cross.</item>  
 </list>  
 </p>

## Schematron

<sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">  
 <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

## Content model

<content>  
 <sequence>  
 <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">  
 <classRef key="model.divTop"/>  
 <classRef key="model.global"/>  
 <elementRef key="desc" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  
 </alternate>  
 <alternate>  
 <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">  
 <elementRef key="item"/>  
 <classRef key="model.global" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  
 </sequence>  
 <sequence>  
 <elementRef key="headLabel"

```

        minOccurs="0"/>
        <elementRef key="headItem"
        minOccurs="0"/>
        <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded
"
        minOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="label"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
        <elementRef key="item"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
        </sequence>
        </sequence>
        </alternate>
        <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
        </sequence>
        </sequence>
        </content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element list
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.sortable.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type
    {
        "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "li
tany" | "syllogism"
    }?,
    (
        ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.glob
al | tei_desc* )*,
        (
            ( ( tei_item, tei_model.global* )+
            | (
                headLabel?,
                headItem?,

```

```

        ( ( label, tei_model.global*, tei_i
tem, tei_model.global* )+ )
    )
),
( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.
global* )* )
)
}

```

## <listEvent>

**<listEvent>** (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event. [[14.3.1. Basic Principles](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

### Member of

model.eventLike model.listLike



## Contained by

core: desc item note p title  
header: licence sourceDesc  
namesdates: event listEvent org  
person place  
textstructure: body

## May contain

core: desc  
namesdates: event listEvent

## Example

```
<listEvent>
  <head>Battles of the American Civil
  War: Kentucky</head>
  <event when="1861-09-19" xml:id="e
  vent01">
    <label>Barbourville</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was
    one of the early engagements of
    the American Civil War. It occurred
    September 19, 1861, in Knox
    County, Kentucky during the campai
    gn known as the Kentucky Confederate
    Offensive. The battle is considered t
    he first Confederate victory in
    the commonwealth, and threw a sca
    re into Federal commanders, who
    rushed troops to central Kentucky i
    n an effort to repel the invasion,
    which was finally thwarted at the <
    ref target="#event02">Battle of
    Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</
    desc>
  </event>
  <event when="1861-10-21" xml:id="e
  vent02">
    <label>Camp Wild Cat</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (a
    lso known as Wildcat Mountain and Ca
    mp
    Wild Cat) was one of the early enga
    gements of the American Civil
    War. It occurred October 21, 1861, i
    n northern Laurel County, Kentucky
    during the campaign known as the
    Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The
    battle is considered one of the very
    first Union victories, and marked
    the first engagement of troops in th
    e commonwealth of Kentucky.</desc>
  </event>
  <event from="1864-06-11" to="1864-
```

```

06-12"
  xml:id="event03">
    <label>Cynthiana</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Keller's Bridge) was an engagement
      during the American Civil War that
      was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,
      in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of
      Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into
      Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the
      raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc>
  </event>
</listEvent>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="desc"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.eventLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="relation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>

```

</content>

## Schema Declaration

```
element listEvent
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    ( ( tei_model.eventLike+, ( relation
| listRelation )* )+ )
  )
}
```

## <listOrg>

**<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [[14.2.2. Organizational Names](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

namesdates

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> <li>• att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@generatedBy</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@default</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@sortKey</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.listLike model.orgPart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: desc item note p title
	corpus: particDesc
	header: licence sourceDesc
	namesdates: listOrg org
	textstructure: body
<b>May contain</b>	core: desc
	namesdates: listOrg org
<b>Note</b>	The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listOrg&gt;   &lt;head&gt;Libyans&lt;/head&gt;   &lt;org&gt;     &lt;orgName&gt;Adyrmachidae&lt;/ orgName&gt;     &lt;desc&gt;These people have, in most po ints, the same customs as the Egyptian s, but       use the costume of the Libyans. The ir women wear on each leg a ring mad e of       bronze [...]&lt;/desc&gt;     &lt;/org&gt;     &lt;org&gt;       &lt;orgName&gt;Nasamonians&lt;/ orgName&gt;       &lt;desc&gt;In summer they leave their flo cks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up       the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the palms [...]&lt;/desc&gt;     &lt;/org&gt;     &lt;org&gt;       &lt;orgName&gt;Garamantians&lt;/ orgName&gt; </pre>

```

    <desc>[...] avoid all society or interc
    ourse with their fellow-men, have no
        weapon of war, and do not know ho
    w to defend themselves. [...]</desc>
    <!-- ... -->
    </org>
</listOrg>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <elementRef key="desc"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="relation" maxOcc
      urs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="org" maxOccurs
        ="1"
          minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listOrg" maxOcc
        urs="1"
          minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="relation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

element listOrg

```

{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    ( ( ( tei_org | tei_listOrg )+, ( relation
n | listRelation )* )+ )
  )
}

```

## <listPerson>

**<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [[14.3.2. The Person Element](#) [16.2. Contextual Information](#) [2.4. The Profile Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@generatedBy</i></li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@default</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.sortable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@sortKey</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.listLike model.orgPart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: desc item note p title
	corpus: particDesc
	header: licence sourceDesc
	namesdates: event listPerson org
	textstructure: body
<b>May contain</b>	core: desc
	namesdates: listPerson org person
<b>Note</b>	The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;listPerson type="respondents"&gt;   &lt;personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/&gt;   &lt;person age="mid" sex="2" xml:id="P1234"/&gt;   &lt;person age="mid" sex="1" xml:id="P4332"/&gt;   &lt;listRelation&gt;     &lt;relation mutual="#P1234 #P4332"       name="spouse" type="personal"/&gt;   &lt;/listRelation&gt; &lt;/listPerson&gt; </pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre> &lt;content&gt;   &lt;sequence&gt;     &lt;classRef key="model.headLike"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;elementRef key="desc"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/&gt;     &lt;alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0"&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"         minOccurs="1"/&gt;       &lt;elementRef key="listRelation"         maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/&gt;     &lt;/alternate&gt; </pre>

```

<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.personLike"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listPerson"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="relation"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element listPerson
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    (
      (
        ( tei_model.personLike | tei_list
Person )+,
        ( relation | listRelation )*
      )+
    )
  )
}

```

## <listPlace>

**<listPlace>** (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [[2.2.7. The Source Description 14.3.4. Places](#)]

**Module** namesdates



## Attributes

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf
  - @next
  - @prev
  - @exclude
  - @select
- att.global.rendition
  - @rend
  - @style
  - @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - @cert
  - @resp
- att.global.source
  - @source
- att.cmc
  - @generatedBy
- att.declarable
  - @default
- att.sortable
  - @sortKey
- att.typed
  - @type
  - @subtype

## Member of Contained by

model.listLike model.orgPart  
core: desc item note p title  
corpus: settingDesc  
header: licence sourceDesc  
namesdates: event listPlace org place  
textstructure: body  
core: desc  
namesdates: listPlace place  
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">  
 <place>  
 <placeName>La roche qui pleure</  
placeName>  
 </place>  
</place>  
 <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</

## May contain

## Example

## Content model

```
placeName>
</place>
</listPlace>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <elementRef key="desc"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="relation" maxOcc
urs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.placeLike"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listPlace"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="relation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element listPlace
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
```

```

(
  tei_model.headLike*,
  tei_desc*,
  ( relation | listRelation )*,
  (
    (
      ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPl
ace )+,
      ( relation | listRelation )*
    )+
  )
)
}

```

## <name>

**<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

- core
  - att.global
    - *@xml:id*
    - *@n*
    - *@xml:lang*
    - *@xml:base*
    - *@xml:space*
    - att.global.linking
      - *@corresp*
      - *@synch*
      - *@sameAs*
      - *@copyOf*
      - *@next*
      - *@prev*
      - *@exclude*
      - *@select*
    - att.global.rendition
      - *@rend*
      - *@style*
      - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
      - *@cert*
      - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
      - *@source*
  - att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
  - att.datable
    - *@period*
    - att.datable.custom

- *@when-custom*
- *@notBefore-custom*
- *@notAfter-custom*
- *@from-custom*
- *@to-custom*
- *@datingPoint*
- *@datingMethod*
- att.datable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.datable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of**

**Contained by**

**May contain**

model.nameLike.agent  
 model.personPart  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp  
 respStmt term title  
 header: catDesc licence  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink org person place placeName  
 roleName surname  
 core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename nameLink

## Note

placeName roleName surname  
character data  
Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

## Example

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccle  
ve</name>  
<name type="place">Villingaholt</  
name>  
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Instit  
ut</name>  
<name ref="#HOC001" type="person"  
>Occleve</name>
```

## Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element name  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,  
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,  
  tei_att.personal.attributes,  
  tei_att.typed.attributes,  
  tei_macro.phraseSeq  
}
```

## <nameLink>

**<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as *van der* or *of*. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
namesdates  
• att.global  
  • @xml:id  
  • @n  
  • @xml:lang  
  • @xml:base  
  • @xml:space  
  • att.global.linking  
    • @corresp  
    • @synch
```

- *@sameAs*
- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.persNamePart  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title  
header: catDesc licence  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename gender  
nameLink org placeName roleName  
surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Example**

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <nameLink>van der</nameLink>
  <surname>Tronck</surname>
</persName>
```

**Example**

```
<persName>
  <forename>Alfred</forename>
  <nameLink>de</nameLink>
  <surname>Musset</surname>
</persName>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```

</content>

## Schema Declaration

```
element nameLink
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <note>

**<note>** (note) contains a note or annotation. [[3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation](#) [2.2.6. The Notes Statement](#) [3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language](#) [10.3.5.4. Notes within Entries](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.anchoring
  - *@anchored*
  - *@targetEnd*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
  - *@place*

**Member of  
Contained by**

- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

**May contain**

**Example**

model.noteLike  
 core: bibl date editor item list name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp  
 respStmt term title  
 header: licence  
 namesdates: affiliation country event  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink org person place placeName  
 roleName surname  
 textstructure: body text  
 core: bibl date desc list name note p  
 ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
 listPerson listPlace nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data  
 In the following example, the  
 translator has supplied a footnote  
 containing an explanation of the term  
 translated as "painterly":  
 And yet it is not only  
 in the great line of Italian renaissance  
 art, but even in the  
 painterly <note place="bottom" resp=  
 "#MDMH"  
 type="gloss">  
 <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</  
 term>. This word has, in the German, t  
 wo  
 distinct meanings, one objective, a qu  
 ality residing in the object,  
 the other subjective, a mode of appreh  
 ension and creation. To avoid  
 confusion, they have been distinguishe  
 d in English as  
 <mentioned>picturesque</  
 mentioned> and



<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.

</note> style of the

Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.

<!-- elsewhere in the document -->

<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">

<resp>translation from German to English</resp>

<name>Hottinger, Marie Donald MacKie</name>

</respStmt>

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the

family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note anchored="true" n="126"> The

alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to

Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents

published by Jacob Mann.

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

<content>

<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>

</content>

## Example

## Content model

## Schema Declaration

```
element note
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.anchoring.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.placement.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

### <org>

**<org>** (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [[14.3.3. Organizational Data](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

```
namesdates
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.editLike
  • @evidence
  • @instant
• att.sortable
  • @sortKey
```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @type</li> <li>• @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
role	specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.	
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	1-∞
		occurrences of teidata .enumerated separated by whitespace
	<b>Note</b>	Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as <i>artist</i> , <i>employer</i> , <i>familyGroup</i> , or <i>politicalParty</i> , each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically

be  
provided  
by a  
<desc>  
for each  
<valItem  
>  
element  
in the  
schema  
specificat  
ion of the  
project's  
customiz  
ation.

**Member of  
Contained by**

**May contain**

**Example**

model.personLike  
corpus: particDesc  
namesdates: event listOrg listPerson  
org  
core: bibl desc name note p ptr  
header: idno  
namesdates: country event eventName  
forename listEvent listOrg listPerson  
listPlace nameLink org person place  
placeName roleName surname  
<org xml:id="JAMs">  
  <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mum  
mu</orgName>  
  <desc>An underground anarchist coll  
ective spearheaded by  
  <persName>Hagbard Celine</  
persName>, who fight the Illuminati  
  from a golden submarine, the <name  
>Leif Ericson</name>  
  </desc>  
  <bibl>  
    <author>Robert Shea</author>  
    <author>Robert Anton Wilson</  
author>  
    <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</  
title>  
  </bibl>  
</org>  
  
<content>  
  <sequence>  
    <classRef key="model.headLike"

**Content model**

```

    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLik
e"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
      <elementRef key="link"/>
      <elementRef key="ptr"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.personLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element org
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  attribute role { list { + } }?,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    (
      tei_model.pLike*
      | (
        tei_model.labelLike
        | tei_model.nameLike
        | tei_model.placeLike
        | tei_model.orgPart
        | tei_model.milestoneLike

```

```

)*
),
( tei_model.noteLike | tei_model.bibliLike | linkGrp | link | tei_ptr )*,
tei_model.personLike*
)
}

```

## <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [[3.1. Paragraphs](#) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

core
• att.global
• @xml:id
• @n
• @xml:lang
• @xml:base
• @xml:space
• att.global.linking
• @corresp
• @synch
• @sameAs
• @copyOf
• @next
• @prev
• @exclude
• @select
• att.global.rendition
• @rend
• @style
• @rendition
• att.global.responsibility
• @cert
• @resp
• att.global.source
• @source
• att.cmc
• @generatedBy
• att.declaring
• @decls
• att.fragmentable
• @part
• att.written
• @hand

```

### Member of Contained by

```

model.pLike
core: item note
corpus: particDesc settingDesc

```

## May contain

header: availability encodingDesc  
licence publicationStmt sourceDesc  
namesdates: event org person place  
textstructure: body  
core: bibl date desc list name note ptr  
term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

## Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is  
blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>  
>What have you  
done?</q>  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>I have now arranged that you can  
be married a second time,</q> replied  
Thjostolf.  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>Then you must mean that Thorval  
d is dead,</q> she said.  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And  
now you must think up some plan for  
me.</q>  
</p>
```

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:p">  
<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or  
ancestor::tei:p) and  
not( ancestor::tei:floatingText |  
parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item  
| parent::tei:note | parent::tei:q |  
parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks |  
parent::tei:said | parent::tei:sp |  
parent::tei:stage | parent::tei:cell |  
parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model  
violation: Paragraphs may not occur  
inside other paragraphs or ab  
elements. </sch:report> </sch:rule>  
<sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:p">  
<sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatin  
gText | parent::tei:figure |  
parent::tei:note"> Abstract model
```

## Schematron

violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as `div`, `p`, or `ab`, unless `p` is a child of `figure` or `note`, or is a descendant of `floatingText`.  
`</sch:assert>` `</sch:rule>`

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element p
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

## <particDesc>

**<particDesc>** (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[16.2. Contextual Information](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
corpus
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
```



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declarable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@default</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.profileDescPart
<b>Contained by</b>	header: profileDesc
<b>May contain</b>	core: p namesdates: listOrg listPerson org person
<b>Note</b>	May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;particDesc&gt;   &lt;listPerson&gt;     &lt;person age="mid" sex="2" xml:id=" P-1234"&gt;       &lt;p&gt;Female informant, well- educated, born in         Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of un known occupation. Speaks French flue ntly.         Socio-Economic status B2.&lt;/p&gt;     &lt;/person&gt;     &lt;person sex="1" xml:id="P-4332"&gt;       &lt;persName&gt;         &lt;surname&gt;Hancock&lt;/surname&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Antony&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;Aloysius&lt;/forename&gt;         &lt;forename&gt;St John&lt;/forename&gt;       &lt;/persName&gt;       &lt;residence notAfter="1959"&gt;         &lt;address&gt;           &lt;street&gt;Railway Cuttings&lt;/street&gt;           &lt;settlement&gt;East Cheam&lt;/ settlement&gt;         &lt;/address&gt;       &lt;/residence&gt;       &lt;occupation&gt;comedian&lt;/ occupation&gt;     &lt;/person&gt; </pre>

```

<listRelation>
  <relation mutual="#P-1234 #P-
4332"
    name="spouse" type="personal"/>
</listRelation>
</listPerson>
</particDesc>

```

This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.personLike"/
>
      <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
      <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element particDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.personLike | tei_listPers
on | tei_listOrg )+
  )
}

```

## <person>

**<person>** (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [[14.3.2. The Person Element](#) [16.2.2. The Participant Description](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*

role

specifies a primary role or classification for the person.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata .enumerated separated by whitespace

**Note** Values for this attribute may be locally

defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as *artist*, *employer*, *author*, *relative*, or *servant*, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

sex

specifies the sex of the person.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace

	<p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p>
gender	<p>specifies the gender of the person.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.gender separated by whitespace</p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.</p>
age	<p>specifies an age group for the person.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated</p> <p><b>Note</b> Values for this attribute</p>

may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as *infant*, *child*, *teen*, *adult*, or *senior*, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project specification.

**Member of**  
**Contained by**

**May contain**

**Note**

model.personLike  
corpus: particDesc  
namesdates: event listPerson org  
core: bibl name note p ptr  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation event gender  
listEvent  
May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the

model.personPart class.

**Example**

```
<person age="adult" sex="F">
  <p>Female respondent, well-
    educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Ja
    n 1950, of unknown occupation. Speak
    s French fluently. Socio-Economic
    status B2.</p>
</person>
```

**Example**

```
<person age="immortal" role="god"
  sex="intersex">
  <persName>Hermaphroditos</
  persName>
  <persName xml:lang="grc">Ἑρμαφρό
  διτος</persName>
</person>
```

**Example**

```
<person role="poet" sex="M" xml:id=
  "Ovi01">
  <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</
  persName>
  <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ov
  idius Naso</persName>
  <birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 Marc
  h 43 BC <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Sulmona</
    settlement>
    <country key="IT">Italy</country>
  </placeName>
</birth>
  <death notAfter="0018" notBefore="
  0017">17 or 18 AD <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Tomis (Con
    stanta)</settlement>
    <country key="RO">Romania</
    country>
  </placeName>
</death>
</person>
```

**Example**

The following exemplifies an adaptation of the vCard standard to indicate an unknown gender for a fictional character.

```
<person gender="U" xml:id="ariel">
  <persName>Ariel</persName>
  <note>Character in <title level="m">
  The Tempest</title>.</note>
</person>
```

**Content model**

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="1"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <elementRef key="ptr"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element person
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { + } }?,
  attribute sex { list { + } }?,
  attribute gender { list { + } }?,
  attribute age { text }?,
  (
    tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.personPart | tei_model.
global | tei_ptr )*
  )
}

```

## <place>

**<place>** (place) contains data about a geographic location. [[14.3.4. Places](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

namesdates
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev

```



- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

**May contain**

**Example**

model.placeLike  
 corpus: settingDesc  
 namesdates: event listPlace org place  
 core: bibl desc name note p ptr  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: country event listEvent  
 listPlace place placeName  
 <place>  
   <country>Lithuania</country>  
   <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>  
 </place>  
 <place>  
   <settlement>Vilnius</settlement>  
 </place>  
 <place>  
   <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>  
 </place>  
 </place>

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

```

minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.placeStateLi
ke"/>
  <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>
  <elementRef key="name"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <elementRef key="idno"/>
  <elementRef key="ptr"/>
  <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
  <elementRef key="link"/>
</alternate>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
  <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element place
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    (
      tei_model.pLike*
      | (
        tei_model.labelLike
        | tei_model.placeStateLike
        | tei_model.eventLike
        | tei_name
      )*
    ),
    (
      tei_model.noteLike
      | tei_model.biblLike
      | tei_idno
      | tei_ptr
    )
  )
}

```

```

| linkGrp
| link
)*,
( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace
)*
)
}

```

## <placeName>

**<placeName>** (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name.

[\[14.2.3. Place Names\]](#)

### Module

### Attributes

- namesdates
- att.global
    - *@xml:id*
    - *@n*
    - *@xml:lang*
    - *@xml:base*
    - *@xml:space*
    - att.global.linking
      - *@corresp*
      - *@synch*
      - *@sameAs*
      - *@copyOf*
      - *@next*
      - *@prev*
      - *@exclude*
      - *@select*
    - att.global.rendition
      - *@rend*
      - *@style*
      - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
      - *@cert*
      - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
      - *@source*
  - att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
  - att.datable
    - *@period*
    - att.datable.custom
      - *@when-custom*
      - *@notBefore-custom*
      - *@notAfter-custom*
      - *@from-custom*
      - *@to-custom*
      - *@datingPoint*

- *@datingMethod*
- att.datable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.datable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*
- att.editLike
  - *@evidence*
  - *@instant*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.placeNamePart  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
 title  
 header: catDesc licence  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink org place placeName  
 roleName surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data

**Example**

```
<placeName>
  <settlement>Rochester</settlement>
  <region>New York</region>
</placeName>
```

**Example**

```

<placeName>
  <geogName>Arrochar Alps</
geogName>
  <region>Argylshire</region>
</placeName>

```

**Example**

```

<placeName>
  <measure>10 miles</measure>
  <offset>Northeast of</offset>
  <settlement>Attica</settlement>
</placeName>

```

**Content model**

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

**Schema Declaration**

```

element placeName
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.dataable.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  tei_att.personal.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**<profileDesc>**

**<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [[2.4. The Profile Description](#) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

**Module****Attributes**

```

header
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev

```

- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Member of**  
**Contained by**  
**May contain**  
**Note**

model.teiHeaderPart

header: *teiHeader*

corpus: *particDesc* *settingDesc*

Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of *<profileDesc>* unless these are documenting multiple texts.

### Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</
language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issu
es</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose degree="high" type="enter
tain"/>
    <purpose degree="medium" type="in
form"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>

<content>
```

**Content model**

```

<classRef key="model.profileDescPart
"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element profileDesc { tei_att.global.att
ributes, tei_model.profileDescPart* }

```

### <ptr>

**<ptr>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [[3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#) [17.1. Links](#)]

#### Module

#### Attributes

```

core
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.cReferencing
  • @cRef
• att.cmc
  • @generatedBy
• att.declaring
  • @decls
• att.internetMedia
  • @mimeType
• att.pointing

```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@targetLang</i></li> <li>• <i>@target</i></li> <li>• <i>@evaluate</i></li> <li>• <i>att.typed</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.ptrLike
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title header: catDesc licence publicationStmt namesdates: affiliation country event eventName forename gender nameLink org person place placeName roleName surname
<b>May contain</b>	Empty element
<b>Note</b>	The <i>target</i> and <i>cRef</i> attributes are mutually exclusive.
<b>Example</b>	<pre>&lt;ptr target="#p143 #p144"/&gt; &lt;ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/&gt; &lt;ptr cRef="1.3.4"/&gt;</pre>
<b>Schematron</b>	<pre>&lt;sch:rule context="tei:ptr"&gt;   &lt;sch:report test="@target and   @cRef"&gt;Only one of the attributes   @target and @cRef may be supplied on   &lt;sch:name/&gt;.&lt;/sch:report&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;</pre>
<b>Content model</b>	<pre>&lt;content&gt;   &lt;empty/&gt; &lt;/content&gt;</pre>
<b>Schema Declaration</b>	<pre>element ptr {   tei_att.global.attributes,   tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,   tei_att.cmc.attributes,   tei_att.declaring.attributes,   tei_att.internetMedia.attributes,   tei_att.pointing.attributes,   tei_att.typed.attributes,   empty }</pre>



## <pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

core

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
  - att.global.linking
    - @corresp
    - @synch
    - @sameAs
    - @copyOf
    - @next
    - @prev
    - @exclude
    - @select
  - att.global.rendition
    - @rend
    - @style
    - @rendition
  - att.global.responsibility
    - @cert
    - @resp
  - att.global.source
    - @source
- att.naming
  - @role
  - @nymRef
- att.canonical
  - @key
  - @ref

### Member of

### Contained by

### May contain

model.imprintPart

model.publicationStmtPart.detail

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

core: date name note ptr term title

header: idno

namesdates: affiliation country

eventName forename nameLink

placeName roleName surname

character data

### Example

<publicationStmt>

<publisher>Oxford University Press</

```

publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element pubPlace
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

## <publicationStmt>

**<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

header
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source

```

## Contained by

```

header: fileDesc

```

**May contain****Note**

core: date p ptr pubPlace publisher  
header: availability idno

Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

**Example**

```
<publicationStmt>  
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </  
publisher>  
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig<  
/pubPlace>  
  <date when="1846"/>  
</publicationStmt>
```

**Example**

```
<publicationStmt>  
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</  
publisher>  
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>  
  <availability>  
    <p>Available under licence only</p>  
  </availability>  
  <date when="1992">1992</date>  
</publicationStmt>
```

**Example**

```
<publicationStmt>  
  <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>  
  <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>  
  <date>2017</date>  
  <availability>  
    <p>This is an open access work licen  
sed under a Creative Commons Attribu  
tion 4.0 International license.</p>  
  </availability>  
  <ptr target="http://  
digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>  
</publicationStmt>
```

**Content model**

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.publicationSt
mtPart.agency"/>
      <classRef key="model.publicationSt
mtPart.detail"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
s="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element publicationStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      (
        tei_model.publicationStmtPart.
agency,
        tei_model.publicationStmtPart.
detail*
      )+
    )
    | tei_model.pLike+
  )
}

```

## <publisher>

**<publisher>** (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```

core
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global-linking

```

- *@corresp*
- *@synch*
- *@sameAs*
- *@copyOf*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*

**Member of**

**Contained by**

**May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

**Content model**

**Schema Declaration**

model.imprintPart  
 model.publicationStmtPart.agency  
 core: bibl  
 header: publicationStmt  
 core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data

Use the full form of the name by which  
 a company is usually referred to,  
 rather than any abbreviation of it  
 which may appear on a title page

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</
publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

element publisher

```

{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

## <resp>

**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*
    - *@to-custom*

- *@datingPoint*
- *@datingMethod*
- att.datable.iso
  - *@when-iso*
  - *@notBefore-iso*
  - *@notAfter-iso*
  - *@from-iso*
  - *@to-iso*
- att.datable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

core: respStmt  
core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

**Example**

```
<respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/
  vocabulary/relators/
  com.html">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.li
  mited"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element resp
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```

    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_att.dataable.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

```

## <respStmt>

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*

### Member of Contained by

model.respLike

core: bibl

header: titleStmt

### May contain Example

core: name note resp

<respStmt>

<resp>transcribed from original ms</



## Example

```
resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</
persName>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</
resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

## Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="resp"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="resp"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="note"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  (
    (
      ( tei_resp+, tei_model.nameLike.agent+ )
      | ( tei_model.nameLike.agent+, tei
```

```

        _resp+ )
      ),
      tei_note*
    )
  }

```

## <roleName>

**<roleName>** (role name) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

- namesdates
- att.global
    - *@xml:id*
    - *@n*
    - *@xml:lang*
    - *@xml:base*
    - *@xml:space*
    - att.global.linking
      - *@corresp*
      - *@synch*
      - *@sameAs*
      - *@copyOf*
      - *@next*
      - *@prev*
      - *@exclude*
      - *@select*
    - att.global.rendition
      - *@rend*
      - *@style*
      - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
      - *@cert*
      - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
      - *@source*
  - att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
  - att.personal
    - *@full*
    - *@sort*
    - att.naming
      - *@role*
      - *@nymRef*
      - att.canonical
        - *@key*
        - *@ref*
  - att.typed

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.persNamePart
<b>Contained by</b>	core: bibl date desc editor item name note p pubPlace publisher resp term title
	header: catDesc licence
	namesdates: affiliation country
	eventName forename gender
	nameLink org placeName roleName
	surname
<b>May contain</b>	core: date name note ptr term title
	header: idno
	namesdates: affiliation country
	eventName forename nameLink
	placeName roleName surname
	character data
<b>Note</b>	A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;persName&gt;   &lt;forename&gt;William&lt;/forename&gt;   &lt;surname&gt;Poultney&lt;/surname&gt;   &lt;roleName&gt;Earl of Bath&lt;/ roleName&gt; &lt;/persName&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;p&gt;The &lt;roleName role="solicitor_ge neral"&gt;S.G.&lt;/roleName&gt; is the only n ational public official, including the Supreme Court justices, required by statute to be "learned in th e law."&lt;/p&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;p&gt;   &lt;persName ref="#NJF"&gt;     &lt;roleName role="solicitor_general"&gt; Solicitor General&lt;/roleName&gt; Noel J. Francisco&lt;/persName&gt;,     representing the administration, asser ted in rebuttal that there was nothing t o disavow (...)   &lt;persName ref="#NJF"&gt;Francisco&lt;/ persName&gt; had violated the scrupulou s standard of candor about the facts an d     the law that &lt;roleName role="solicito r_general"&gt;S.G.s&lt;/roleName&gt;, in Rep </pre>

ublican and Democratic administration  
s  
alike, have repeatedly said they must  
honor.  
</p>

## Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element roleName
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.personal.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <settingDesc>

**<settingDesc>** (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
corpus
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev
      • @exclude
      • @select
    • att.global.rendition
      • @rend
      • @style
      • @rendition
    • att.global.responsibility
      • @cert
```

**Member of  
Contained by  
May contain**

**Note**

**Example**

**Content model**

**Schema Declaration**

- *@resp*
- att.global.source
- *@source*
- att.declarable
- *@default*

model.profileDescPart

header: profileDesc

core: p

namesdates: listPlace place

May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> inside <standOff> should be preferred.

<settingDesc>

<p>Texts recorded in the Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988</p>

</settingDesc>

<content>

<alternate>

<classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">

<elementRef key="setting"/>

<classRef key="model.placeLike"/>

<elementRef key="listPlace"/>

</alternate>

</alternate>

</content>

element settingDesc

{

tei\_att.global.attributes,

tei\_att.declarable.attributes,

( tei\_model.pLike+ | ( setting | tei\_model.placeLike | tei\_listPlace )+ )

}

## <sourceDesc>

**<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as 'born digital' for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

#### header

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.declarable
  - *@default*

### Contained by

### May contain

header: fileDesc

core: bibl list p

namesdates: listEvent listOrg

listPerson listPlace

### Example

<sourceDesc>

<bibl>

<title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In

<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>,

<title>The Penny Histories</title>.

<publisher>OUP</publisher>

<date>1968</date>. </bibl>

</sourceDesc>

### Example

<sourceDesc>

```

    <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element sourceDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.biblLike | tei_model.sourceDescPart | tei_model.listLike )+
  )
}

```

## <surname>

**<surname>** (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*

- *@prev*
- *@exclude*
- *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@key*
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.persNamePart  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title  
header: catDesc licence  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename gender  
nameLink org placeName roleName  
surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Example**

```
<surname type="combine">St John St
evas</surname>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```



## Schema Declaration

```
element surname
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.personal.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## <taxonomy>

**<taxonomy>** (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
header
• att.global
  • @xml:id
  • @n
  • @xml:lang
  • @xml:base
  • @xml:space
  • att.global.linking
    • @corresp
    • @synch
    • @sameAs
    • @copyOf
    • @next
    • @prev
    • @exclude
    • @select
  • att.global.rendition
    • @rend
    • @style
    • @rendition
  • att.global.responsibility
    • @cert
    • @resp
  • att.global.source
    • @source
• att.datcat
  • @datcat
  • @valueDatcat
  • @targetDatcat
```

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

### Note

```
header: classDecl taxonomy
core: bibl desc
header: category taxonomy
Nested taxonomies are common in
```

many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested.

### Example

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
    <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
    <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
    <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
    <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
    <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d">
    <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
      <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
      <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>

<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="literature">
    <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="poetry">
      <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="sonnet">
        <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
        <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
          <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc>
        </category>
      </category>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

### Example

```

        </category>
        <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
          <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</
catDesc>
        </category>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="haiku">
        <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
      </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="drama">
      <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="meter">
    <catDesc>Metrical Categories</
catDesc>
    <category xml:id="feet">
      <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="iambic">
        <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="trochaic">
        <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
      </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="feetNumber">
      <catDesc>Number of feet</
catDesc>
      <category xml:id="pentameter">
        <catDesc>>Pentameter</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tetrameter">
        <catDesc>>Tetrameter</catDesc>
      </category>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
<!-- elsewhere in document -->
<lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pe
ntameter">
  <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer'
s day</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>

<content>
  <alternate>

```

## Content model

```

<alternate>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.descLike"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="equiv" maxOccu
rs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="gloss" maxOccu
rs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
"
      minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="category"/>
      <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence>
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element taxonomy
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.datcat.attributes,
  (
    (
      ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )+
      | (
        ( tei_model.descLike | equiv | gl

```

```

oss )+,
    ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )*
    )
    )
    | ( tei_model.biblLike, ( tei_category
| tei_taxonomy )* )
    )
}

```

## <teiHeader>

**<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#) [16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

### Module

header

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@synch*
  - *@sameAs*
  - *@copyOf*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
  - *@exclude*
  - *@select*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**

textstructure: TEI  
header: encodingDesc fileDesc  
profileDesc

### Note

One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

### Example

```

<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>

```

```

        <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1
623) in electronic form</title>
        <author>Shakespeare, William (156
4-1616)</author>
        <respStmt>
            <resp>Originally prepared by</
resp>
            <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</
name>
        </respStmt>
        <respStmt>
            <resp>Revised and edited by</
resp>
            <name>Christine Avern-Carr</
name>
        </respStmt>
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
        <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</
distributor>
        <address>
            <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxfor
d OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
        </address>
        <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
        <availability>
            <p>Freely available on a non-
commercial basis.</p>
        </availability>
        <date when="1968">1968</date>
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
        <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare,
prepared by Charlton Hinman (The No
rton Facsimile,
            1968)</bibl>
    </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
<projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in th
e production of a series of old-spelling
        concordances in 1968, this text wa
s extensively checked and revised for u
se during the
            editing of the new Oxford Shakesp
eare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
</projectDesc>

```

```

<editorialDecl>
  <correction>
    <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
  </correction>
  <normalization>
    <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.</p>
  </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
<refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
    <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here: <list>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a period</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a space</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
      </item>
    </list>
  </cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>
  </revisionDesc>

```

## Content model

```
</revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
      minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_fileDesc, tei_model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

## <term>

**<term>** (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [[3.4.1. Terms and Glosses](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
core
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:base
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.linking
      • @corresp
      • @synch
      • @sameAs
      • @copyOf
      • @next
      • @prev
      • @exclude
      • @select
    • att.global.rendition
      • @rend
      • @style
      • @rendition
    • att.global.responsibility
```



- *@cert*
- *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cReferencing
  - *@cRef*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
  - *@decls*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.emphLike  
 core: bibl date desc editor item name  
 note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
 title  
 header: catDesc licence  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename gender  
 nameLink placeName roleName  
 surname

**May contain**

core: date name note ptr term title  
 header: idno  
 namesdates: affiliation country  
 eventName forename nameLink  
 placeName roleName surname  
 character data

**Note**

When this element appears within an <index> element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a <gloss> element by means of its *ref* attribute; alternatively a <gloss> element may point to a <term>

element by means of its *target* attribute.

In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The `<term>` element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the `<term>` element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the `att.canonical` class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

#### **Example**

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a `<term>parser</term>`, and much of the history

#### **Example**

of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

We may define `<term rend="sc" xml:id="TDPV1">discoursal point of view</term>` as

`<gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed`

through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the

fiction.`</gloss>`

#### **Example**

We may define `<term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>` as

`<gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationsh`

## Example

## Content model

## Schema Declaration

ip, expressed  
through discourse structure, between  
the implied author or some other addresser, and the  
fiction.</gloss>  
We discuss Leech's concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> below.

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>
```

```
element term  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,  
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,  
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,  
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,  
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,  
  tei_att.typed.attributes,  
  tei_macro.phraseSeq  
}
```

## <text>

**<text>** (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [[4. Default Text Structure](#) [16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

```
textstructure  
  • att.global  
    • @xml:id  
    • @n  
    • @xml:lang  
    • @xml:base  
    • @xml:space  
    • att.global.linking  
      • @corresp  
      • @synch  
      • @sameAs  
      • @copyOf  
      • @next  
      • @prev  
      • @exclude
```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@select</i></li> <li>• att.global.rendition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@rend</i></li> <li>• <i>@style</i></li> <li>• <i>@rendition</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@cert</i></li> <li>• <i>@resp</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@source</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.declaring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@decls</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@type</i></li> <li>• <i>@subtype</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.written <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@hand</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Member of</b>	model.resource
<b>Contained by</b>	textstructure: TEI
<b>May contain</b>	core: note
<b>Note</b>	textstructure: body This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.
<b>Example</b>	<pre> &lt;text&gt;   &lt;front&gt;     &lt;docTitle&gt;       &lt;titlePart&gt;Autumn Haze&lt;/titlePart&gt;     &lt;/docTitle&gt;   &lt;/front&gt;   &lt;body&gt;     &lt;l&gt;Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf&lt;/l&gt;     &lt;l&gt;That settles softly down upon the water?&lt;/l&gt;   &lt;/body&gt; &lt;/text&gt; </pre>
<b>Example</b>	<p>The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:</p> <pre> &lt;text&gt;   &lt;front&gt;     &lt;!-- front matter for the whole group -- </pre>

## Content model

```
>
</front>
<group>
  <text>
<!-- first text -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second text -->
  </text>
</group>
</text>

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
s="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="body"/>
      <elementRef key="group"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="back"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
s="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

## Schema Declaration

```
element text
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.global*,
```

```

( ( front, tei_model.global* )? ),
( tei_body | group ),
tei_model.global*,
( ( back, tei_model.global* )? )
)
}

```

## <title>

**<title>** (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#)]

### Module

core

### Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@synch*
    - *@sameAs*
    - *@copyOf*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
    - *@exclude*
    - *@select*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rend*
    - *@style*
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@key*
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.custom
    - *@when-custom*
    - *@notBefore-custom*
    - *@notAfter-custom*
    - *@from-custom*

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@to-custom</i></li> <li>• <i>@datingPoint</i></li> <li>• <i>@datingMethod</i></li> <li>• att.datable.iso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@when-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@notBefore-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@notAfter-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@from-iso</i></li> <li>• <i>@to-iso</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.datable.w3c <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@when</i></li> <li>• <i>@notBefore</i></li> <li>• <i>@notAfter</i></li> <li>• <i>@from</i></li> <li>• <i>@to</i></li> </ul> </li> <li>• att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• type</li> <li>• @subtype</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
type	<p>classifies the title according to some convenient typology.</p> <p><b>Derived from</b> att.typed</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.e numerate d</p> <p><b>Sample main values</b> main</p> <p><b>include:</b> title</p> <p><b>sub</b> (sub ordi nate) subti tle, title of part</p> <p><b>alt</b> (alte rnat e) alter nate title,</p>

often  
in  
another  
language  
, by  
which  
the  
work  
is  
also  
known

**short**  
abbreviated  
form  
of  
title

**desc**  
(descriptive)  
descriptive  
phrase  
of  
the  
work  
functioning  
as  
a  
title

**Note** This  
attribute  
is  
provided  
for  
convenience  
in  
analysing  
titles and



processin  
g them  
accordin  
g to their  
type;  
where  
such  
specialize  
d  
processin  
g is not  
necessary  
, there is  
no need  
for such  
analysis,  
and the  
entire  
title,  
including  
subtitles  
and any  
parallel  
titles,  
may be  
enclosed  
within a  
single  
<title>  
element.

level

indicates the  
bibliographic level  
for a title, that is,  
whether it  
identifies an  
article, book,  
journal, series, or  
unpublished  
material.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Legal** a  
**values** (anal  
**are:** ytic)  
the

title  
applies to  
an  
analytic  
item,  
such  
as  
an  
article,  
poem,  
or  
other  
work  
published  
as  
part  
of a  
larger  
item.

**m**

(monographic)  
the  
title  
applies to  
a  
monograph  
such  
as a  
book  
or  
other  
item  
considered to

be a  
disti  
nct  
publi  
catio  
n,  
inclu  
ding  
singl  
e  
volu  
mes  
of  
multi  
-  
volu  
me  
work  
s

**j**

(jour  
nal)  
the  
title  
appli  
es to  
any  
seria  
l or  
perio  
dical  
publi  
catio  
n  
such  
as a  
jour  
nal,  
mag  
azin  
e, or  
news  
pape  
r

**s**

(seri  
es)

the  
title  
appli  
es to  
a  
serie  
s of  
othe  
rwis  
e  
disti  
nct  
publi  
catio  
ns  
such  
as a  
colle  
ction

**u**

(unp  
ublis  
hed)  
the  
title  
appli  
es to  
any  
unpu  
blish  
ed  
mate  
rial  
(incl  
udin  
g  
thes  
es  
and  
disse  
rtati  
ons  
unle  
ss  
publi  
shed  
by a  
com

merc  
ial  
pres  
s)

**Note** The level  
of a title  
is  
sometime  
s implied  
by its  
context:  
for  
example,  
a title  
appearin  
g directly  
within an  
<analytic  
>  
element  
is *ipso  
facto* of  
level 'a',  
and one  
appearin  
g within  
a  
<series>  
element  
of level  
's'. For  
this  
reason,  
the *level*  
attribute  
is not  
required  
in  
contexts  
where its  
value can  
be  
unambig  
uously  
inferred.  
Where it  
is  
supplied

in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

**Member of  
Contained by**

model.emphLike  
core: bibl date desc editor item name  
note p pubPlace publisher resp term  
title  
header: catDesc licence titleStmt  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename gender  
nameLink placeName roleName  
surname

**May contain**

core: bibl date desc list name note ptr  
term title  
header: idno  
namesdates: affiliation country  
eventName forename listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace nameLink  
placeName roleName surname  
character data

**Note**

The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

**Example**

<title>Information Technology and the  
Research Process: Proceedings of  
a conference held at Cranfield Institut  
e of Technology, UK,  
18-21 July 1989</title>

**Example**

<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urberville  
s: a machine readable  
edition</title>

**Example**

<title type="full">

```

<title type="main">Synthèse</title>
<title type="sub">an international jo
urnal for
    epistemology, methodology and histo
ry of
    science</title>
</title>

```

## Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/
>
</content>

```

## Schema Declaration

```

element title
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "
u" }?,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}

```

## <titleStmt>

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2. The File Description](#)]

### Module

### Attributes

### header

- att.global
  - @xml:id
  - @n
  - @xml:lang
  - @xml:base
  - @xml:space
- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf
  - @next
  - @prev
  - @exclude
  - @select

- att.global.rendition
  - *@rend*
  - *@style*
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

**Contained by**  
**May contain**  
**Example**

```
header: fileDesc
core: editor respStmt title
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription
</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="title"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <classRef key="model.respLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element titleStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_title+, tei_model.respLike* )
}
```

## ***Model classes***

### **model.addressLike**

**model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

model.pPart.data

**Members**

*affiliation*



## model.attributable

**model.attributable** groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [[3.3.3. Quotation](#) [4.3.2. Floating Texts](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	macro.phraseSeq model.inter
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.quoteLike</i>

## model.availabilityPart

**model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	availability
<b>Members</b>	<i>licence</i>

## model.biblLike

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event model.inter model.personPart org place sourceDesc taxonomy
<b>Members</b>	<i>bibl</i>

## model.biblPart

**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.imprintPart[pubPlace publisher]</i> <i>model.respLike[editor respStmt]</i> <i>availability bibl</i>

## model.common

**model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	body
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.cmc model.divPart[model.lLike model.pLike[p]] model.inter[model.attributable[model. quoteLike] model.biblLike[bibl] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] model.oddDecl model.stageLike]</i>

<b>Note</b>	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.
-------------	--

## **model.dateLike**

**model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.pPart.data
<b>Members</b>	<i>date</i>

## **model.descLike**

**model.descLike** groups elements which contain a description of their function.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	category taxonomy
<b>Members</b>	<i>desc</i>

## **model.divBottom**

**model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	body list
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.divBottomPart</i> <i>model.divWrapper</i>

## **model.divPart**

**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	macro.specialPara model.common
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.lLike</i> <i>model.pLike[p]</i>
<b>Note</b>	Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

## **model.divTop**

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	body list
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.divTopPart[model.headLike]</i>

*model.divWrapper*

## **model.divTopPart**

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.divTop
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.headLike</i>

## **model.emphLike**

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
<b>Members</b>	<i>term title</i>

## **model.encodingDescPart**

**model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	encodingDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>classDecl</i>

## **model.eventLike**

**model.eventLike** groups elements which describe events.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event listEvent model.orgPart model.personPart place
<b>Members</b>	<i>event listEvent</i>

## **model.global**

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl body date list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart person text
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.global.edit model.global.meta model.milestoneLike model.noteLike[note]</i>

## **model.highlighted**

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically

distinct. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl model.phrase
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.emphLike[term title]</i> <i>model.hiLike</i>

## model.imprintPart

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.biblPart
<b>Members</b>	<i>pubPlace publisher</i>

## model.inter

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.attributable[model.quoteLike]</i> <i>model.biblLike[bibl]</i> <i>model.egLike</i> <i>model.labelLike[desc]</i> <i>model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace]</i> <i>model.oddDecl</i> <i>model.stageLike</i>

## model.labelLike

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event model.inter org place
<b>Members</b>	<i>desc</i>

## model.limitedPhrase

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	catDesc macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.emphLike[term title]</i> <i>model.hiLike</i> <i>model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[a ffiliation]</i> <i>model.dateLike[date]</i> <i>model.measureLike</i>

*model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike  
model.persNamePart[forename  
nameLink roleName surname]  
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] eventName  
idno]] model.pPart.editorial  
model.pPart.msdesc [model.phrase.xml](#)  
model.ptrLike[ptr]*

## **model.listLike**

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [[3.8. Lists](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.inter sourceDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace</i>

## **model.nameLike**

**model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.pPart.data org
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country placeName]] eventName idno</i>

<b>Note</b>	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.
-------------	---

## **model.nameLike.agent**

**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.nameLike respStmt
<b>Members</b>	<i>name</i>
<b>Note</b>	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

## model.noteLike

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event model.global org place
<b>Members</b>	<i>note</i>

## model.orgPart

**model.orgPart** groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	org
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.eventLike[event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace</i>

## model.pLike

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	availability encodingDesc event model.divPart org particDesc person place publicationStmnt settingDesc sourceDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>p</i>

## model.pPart.data

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.addressLike[affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent t[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNam ePart[country placeName]] eventName idno]</i>

## model.pPart.edit

**model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
---------------	-----

**Used by**  
**Members**

*bibl model.phrase*  
*model.pPart.editorial*  
*model.pPart.transcriptional*

## **model.paraPart**

**model.paraPart** groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements. [[3.1. Paragraphs](#)]

**Module**

**Used by**

**Members**

*tei*  
*macro.paraContent*  
*model.gLike*  
*model.global[model.global.edit*  
*model.global.meta*  
*model.milestoneLike*  
*model.noteLike[note]]*  
*model.inter[model.attributable[model.*  
*quoteLike] model.biblLike[bibl]*  
*model.egLike model.labelLike[desc]*  
*model.listLike[list listEvent listOrg*  
*listPerson listPlace] model.oddDecl*  
*model.stageLike] model.lLike*  
*model.phrase[model.graphicLike*  
*model.highlighted[model.emphLike[ter*  
*m title] model.hiLike] model.lPart*  
*model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[a*  
*ffiliation] model.dateLike[date]*  
*model.measureLike*  
*model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agen*  
*t[name] model.offsetLike*  
*model.persNamePart[forename*  
*nameLink roleName surname]*  
*model.placeStateLike[model.placeNam*  
*ePart[country placeName]] eventName*  
*idno]]*  
*model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial*  
*model.pPart.transcriptional]*  
*model.pPart.msdesc [model.phrase.xml](#)*  
*model.ptrLike[ptr] model.segLike*  
*model.specDescLike]*

## **model.persNamePart**

**model.persNamePart** groups elements which form part of a personal name. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

**Module**

**Used by**

**Members**

*namesdates*  
*model.nameLike*  
*forename nameLink roleName*  
*surname*

## model.persStateLike

**model.persStateLike** groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.personPart
<b>Members</b>	<i>affiliation gender</i>
<b>Note</b>	These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

## model.personLike

**model.personLike** groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event listPerson org particDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>org person</i>

## model.personPart

**model.personPart** groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [[16.2.2. The Participant Description](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	person
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.biblLike[bibl] model.eventLike[event listEvent] model.persStateLike[affiliation gender] idno name</i>

## model.phrase

**model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	date macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.paraPart
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.graphicLike model.highlighted[model.emphLike[term title] model.hiLike] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[affiliation] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNam</i>



*ePart[country placeName]] eventName  
idno]]  
model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial  
model.pPart.transcriptional]  
model.pPart.msdesc [model.phrase.xml](#)  
model.ptrLike[ptr] model.segLike  
model.specDescLike*

## Note

This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

## model.placeLike

**model.placeLike** groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	event listPlace org place settingDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>place</i>

## model.placeNamePart

**model.placeNamePart** groups elements which form part of a place name.  
[[14.2.3. Place Names](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.placeStateLike
<b>Members</b>	<i>country placeName</i>

## model.placeStateLike

**model.placeStateLike** groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	model.nameLike place
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.placeNamePart[country placeName]</i>

## model.profileDescPart

**model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	profileDesc
<b>Members</b>	<i>particDesc settingDesc</i>

## model.ptrLike

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference.  
[[3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

	model.publicationStmtPart.detail <i>ptr</i>
--	--

## model.publicationStmtPart.agency

**model.publicationStmtPart.agency** groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	publicationStmt
<b>Members</b>	<i>publisher</i>
<b>Note</b>	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

## model.publicationStmtPart.detail

**model.publicationStmtPart.detail** groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	publicationStmt
<b>Members</b>	<i>model.ptrLike[ptr] availability date idno pubPlace</i>
<b>Note</b>	A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

## model.resource

**model.resource** groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	TEI
<b>Members</b>	<i>text</i>

## model.respLike

**model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

<b>Module</b>	tei
---------------	-----

<b>Used by</b>	model.biblPart titleStmt
<b>Members</b>	editor respStmt

### model.teiHeaderPart

**model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Used by</b>	teiHeader
<b>Members</b>	encodingDesc profileDesc

### Attribute classes

### att.anchoring

**att.anchoring** (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	note	
<b>Attributes</b>	anchored	(anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.
		<b>Status</b> Optional
		<b>Datatype</b> teidata.truthValue
		<b>Default</b> true
		<b>Note</b> In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line

annotate  
 d may  
 however  
 be used  
 instead  
 (e.g.  
 'page  
 218, lines  
 3-4'). The  
*anchored*  
 attribute  
 indicates  
 whether  
 any  
 explicit  
 location  
 is given,  
 whether  
 by  
 symbol or  
 by prose  
 cross-  
 reference  
 . The  
 value  
*true*  
 indicates  
 that such  
 an  
 explicit  
 location  
 is  
 indicated  
 in the  
 copy text;  
 the value  
*false*  
 indicates  
 that the  
 copy text  
 does not  
 indicate a  
 specific  
 place of  
 attachme  
 nt for the  
 note. If  
 the

specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

targetEnd

(target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note**

This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the

Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in [17.2.4.6. range\(\)](#).

## Example

```
<p>(...) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses  
necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuor temporibus<anchor xml:id="A55234  
"/> totaliter expediui...</p>  
<!-- elsewhere in the document -->  
<noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234">  
  <note xml:lang="en"> Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days.  
  </note>  
  <note xml:lang="pl"> Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne.  
  </note>  
</noteGrp>
```

## att.cReferencing

**att.cReferencing** provides attributes that may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

### Module

tei

### Members

ptr term

### Attributes

cRef

(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a

canonical  
reference  
expressed using  
the scheme defined  
in a <refsDecl>  
element in the TEI  
header.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.text

**Note** The value  
of *cRef*  
should be  
construct  
ed so  
that  
when the  
algorithm  
for the  
resolutio  
n of  
canonical  
reference  
s  
(describe  
d in  
section  
[17.2.5.](#)  
[Canonical](#)  
[Referenc](#)  
[es](#)) is  
applied  
to it the  
result is a  
valid URI  
reference  
to the  
intended  
target.

The  
<refsDec  
l> to use  
may be  
indicated  
with the  
*decls*

attribute.  
Currently  
these  
Guideline  
s only  
provide  
for a  
single  
canonical  
reference  
to be  
encoded  
on any  
given  
<ptr>  
element.

## att.calendarSystem

**att.calendarSystem** provides attributes for indicating calendar systems to which a date belongs. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*date*

**Attributes**

calendar

indicates one or  
more systems or  
calendars to which  
the date  
represented by the  
content of this  
element belongs.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurren  
ces  
of teidata  
.pointer  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce

**Schemat  
ron** <sch:rule  
context=  
"tei:\*[@c  
alendar]"  
>  
<sch:ass  
ert test="



string-length( normalize-space(.) ) gt 0">  
 @calendar  
 r  
 indicates  
 one or  
 more  
 systems  
 or  
 calendars  
 to which  
 the date  
 represent  
 ed by the  
 content  
 of this  
 element  
 belongs,  
 but this  
 <sch:name/>  
 element  
 has no  
 textual  
 content.</sch:assert>  
 </sch:rule>

He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date> (<date calendar="#julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).

He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian #julian" when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732

(Feb. 11, 1731/32,  
O.S.)</date>.

**Note** Note that the *calendar* attribute declares the calendar system used to interpret the textual content of an element, as it appears on an original source. It does *not* modify the interpretation of the normalization attributes provided by att.databl e.w3c, att.databl e.iso, or att.databl e.custom. Attribute s from those first two classes are always interpret

ed as  
Gregoria  
n or  
proleptic  
Gregoria  
n dates,  
as per  
the  
respectiv  
e  
standards  
on which  
they are  
based.  
The  
calender  
system  
used to  
interpret  
the last  
(att.datab  
le.custom  
) may be  
specified  
with  
*datingMe  
thod*.

## att.canonical

**att.canonical** provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)]

### Module

### Members

### Attributes

tei

*att.naming[att.personal[eventName  
forename name placeName roleName  
surname] affiliation country editor  
event pubPlace] bibl catDesc date  
publisher resp respStmt term title*

key

provides an  
externally-defined  
means of  
identifying the  
entity (or entities)  
being named, using  
a coded value of  
some kind.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.text

```
<author>
  <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
    ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
```

**Note** The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project.

ref

(reference)  
 provides an explicit means of locating a

full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<name ref="http://  
viaf.org/viaf/  
109557338"  
type="person">Seamus Heaney</  
name>
```

**Note** The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies

several  
distinct  
entities.

## Example

In this contrived example, a canonical reference to the same organisation is provided in four different ways.

```
<author n="1">  
  <name ref="http://  
nzetc.victoria.ac.nz/tm/scholarly/name-  
427308.html"  
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa  
liament, Legislative Council</name>  
</author>
```

```
<author n="2">  
  <name ref="nzvn:427308"  
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa  
liament, Legislative Council</name>  
</author>
```

```
<author n="3">  
  <name ref="./  
named_entities.xml#o427308"  
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa  
liament, Legislative Council</name>  
</author>
```

```
<author n="4">  
  <name key="name-427308"  
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa  
liament, Legislative Council</name>  
</author>
```

The first presumes the availability of an internet connection and a processor that can resolve a URI (most can). The second requires, in addition, a `<prefixDef>` that declares how the `nzvm` prefix should be interpreted. The third does not require an internet connection, but does require that a file named `named_entities.xml` be in the same directory as the TEI document. The fourth requires that an entire external system for key resolution be available.

## Note

The *key* attribute is more flexible and

general-purpose, but its use in interchange requires that documentation about how the key is to be resolved be sent to the recipient of the TEI document. In contrast values of the *ref* attribute are resolved using the widely accepted protocols for a URI, and thus less documentation, if any, is likely required by the recipient in data interchange.

These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both *key* and *ref* are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customizaiton, for interchange.

## att.cmc

**att.cmc** (computer-mediated communication) provides attributes categorizing how the element content was created in a CMC environment.

### Module

tei

### Members

*affiliation bibl country date desc  
forename idno list listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace name nameLink  
note p placeName ptr roleName  
surname term title*

### Attributes

generatedBy	(generated by) categorizes how the content of an element was generated in a CMC environment.
<b>Status</b>	Optional
<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.e numerate d
<b>Schematron</b>	<sch:rule context= "tei:*[@g enerated By]"> <sch:ass ert test=" ancestor-

or-  
self::tei:p  
ost">The  
@generat  
edBy  
attribute  
is for use  
within a  
<post>  
element.  
</sch:ass  
ert>  
</sch:rul  
e>

**Suggest human**  
**ed** the  
**values** cont  
**include:** ent  
was  
'natu  
rally'  
type  
d or  
spok  
en  
by a  
hum  
an  
user  
**template**  
the  
cont  
ent  
was  
gene  
rate  
d  
after  
a  
hum  
an  
user  
activ  
ated  
a  
temp  
late



for  
its  
insertion

**system**

the  
content  
was  
generated  
by  
the  
system,  
i.e.  
the  
CMC  
environment

**bot**

the  
content  
was  
generated  
by  
a  
bot,  
i.e. a  
non-human  
agent,  
typically  
one  
that  
is  
not  
part  
of  
the  
CMC

envir  
 onm  
 ent  
 itself  
**unspeci  
 fied**  
 the  
 cont  
 ent  
 was  
 gene  
 rate  
 d by  
 an  
 unkn  
 own  
 or  
 unsp  
 ecifi  
 ed  
 proc  
 ess

automatic system  
 message in chat:  
 user moves on to  
 another chatroom  
 <post generatedBy  
 ="system"  
 rend="color:blue"  
 type="event"  
 who="#system">  
 <p>  
 <name corresp=""  
 #A02"  
 type="nickname"  
 >McMike</name>  
 geht  
 in einen anderen  
 Raum: <name type  
 ="roomname">Kre  
 uzfahrt</name>  
 </p>  
 </post>  
 automatic system  
 message in chat:  
 user enters a  
 chatroom

```

<post generatedBy
="system"
type="event">
  <p>
    <name corresp="
#A08"
    type="nickname"
>c_bo</name> bet
ritt
    den Raum. </p>
  </post>
automatic system
message in chat:
user changes his
font color
<post generatedBy
="system"
rend="color:red"
type="event">
  <p>
    <name corresp="
#A08"
    type="nickname"
>c_bo</name> hat
die
    Farbe gewechselt
.
  </p>
</post>
An automatic
signature of user
including an
automatic
timestamp
(Wikipedia
discussion,
anonymized). The
specification of
generatedBy at the
inner element
<signed> is meant
to override the
specification at the
outer element
<post>. This is
generally possible
when the outer
generatedBy value

```

```

is "human".
<post generatedBy
="human"
indentLevel="2"
synch="#t003944
07"
type="standard"
who="#WU00005
582">
  <p> Kurze Nachfr
age: Die Hieros für
den Goldnamen sta
mmen
  auch von Beckera
th gem. Literatur ?
Grüße —</p>
  <signed generated
By="template"
rend="inline">
    <gap reason="sig
natureContent"/>
    <time generatedB
y="template">18:5
0, 22. Okt. 2008 (C
EST)</time>
  </signed>
</post>
Wikipedia talk
page: user
signature
<post generatedBy
="human"
type="written">
<!-- ... main conten
t of posting ... -->
  <signed generated
By="template">
    <gap reason="sig
natureContent"/>
    <time generatedB
y="template">12:0
1, 12. Jun. 2009 (C
EST)</time>
  </signed>
</post>

```

## att.datable

**att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

### Members

### Attributes

tei

*affiliation country date editor event*

*eventName gender idno licence name*

*placeName resp title*

- att.datable.custom
  - @when-custom
  - @notBefore-custom
  - @notAfter-custom
  - @from-custom
  - @to-custom
  - @datingPoint
  - @datingMethod
- att.datable.iso
  - @when-iso
  - @notBefore-iso
  - @notAfter-iso
  - @from-iso
  - @to-iso
- att.datable.w3c
  - @when
  - @notBefore
  - @notAfter
  - @from
  - @to

period

supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <category>s, <date>s, or <event>s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

## Note

This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.dataable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.dataable.iso` and `att.dataable.custom` classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

## att.dataable.custom

**att.dataable.custom** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [[14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

namesdates

### Members

*att.dataable[affiliation country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]*

### Attributes

when-custom supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace

The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format

normalizations,  
normalized to a  
different dating  
system  
<p>Alhazen died i  
n Cairo on the  
<date when="1040  
-03-06"  
when-  
custom="431-06-  
12"> 12th day of Ju  
mada t-Tania, 430  
AH  
</date>.</p>  
<p>The current w  
orld will end at the  
<date when="2012  
-12-21"  
when-  
custom="13.0.0.0.  
0">end of B'ak'tun  
13</date>.</p>  
<p>The Battle of  
Meggidu  
(<date when-  
custom="Thutmose  
\_III:23">23rd year  
of reign of Thutmos  
e III</date>).</p>  
<p>Esidorus bixit i  
n pace annos LXX p  
lus minus sub  
<date when-  
custom="Ind:4-10-  
11">die XI mensis  
Octobris indictione  
IIII</date>  
</p>  
Not all custom date  
formulations will  
have Gregorian  
equivalents.The  
*when-custom*  
attribute and other  
custom dating are  
not constrained to  
a datatype by the  
TEI, but individual

	projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.
notBefore-custom	<p>specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace</p>
notAfter-custom	<p>specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace</p>
from-custom	<p>indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .word separated</p>



	<p>d by whitespace</p> <pre>&lt;event datingMethod="#julian" from- custom="1666-09-02" to-custom="1666-09-05" xml:id="FIRE1"&gt; &lt;head&gt;The Great Fire of London&lt;/head&gt; &lt;p&gt;The Great Fire of London burned through a large part of the city of London.&lt;/p&gt; &lt;/event&gt;</pre>
to-custom	<p>indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p>
datingPoint	<p>supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.pointer</p>

datingMethod

supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.pointer

Containing the Originall, Antiquity, In creafe, Moderne eftate, and defcription of that Citie, written in the yeare  
<date calendar="#julian" datingMethod="#julian" when-custom="1598">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow

Citizen of London. In this example, the *calendar* attribute points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the *datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *when-custom* attribute value is Julian too.

<date datingMethod="#creationOfWorld">

```

when="1382-06-
28"
when-
custom="6890-06-
20"> μηνὶ Ἰουνίου
εἰς <num>κ</
num> ἔτους <num>
>ζω</num>
</date>

```

In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured ‘from the creation of the world’, which is normalized (in *when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.

**Note** Note that the *datingMethod* attribute (unlike *calendar* defined in att.datafile) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized

ed (i.e. in the *when-custom* or other *X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the element.

## att.dateable.iso

**att.dateable.iso** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events using the ISO 8601:2004 standard. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

### Members

### Attributes

namesdates

*att.dateable[affiliation country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]*

when-iso

supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.  
 <date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>  
 <date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-

04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>  
 <time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>  
 <time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>  
 <date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date>  
 <time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>  
 <time when-iso="14">around two</time>  
 <time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>  
 All of the examples of the *when* attribute in the att.dataable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute.  
 He likes to be punctual. I said <q>  
   <time when-iso="12">around noon</time>  
 </q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.  
 The second occurrence of

	<p>&lt;time&gt; could have been encoded with the <i>when</i> attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification. The first occurrence could not.</p>
notBefore-iso	<p>specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso</p>
notAfter-iso	<p>specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso</p>
from-iso	<p>indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso</p>
to-iso	<p>indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.iso</p>

**Note**

The value of these attributes should be

a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601:2004, using the Gregorian calendar.

If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,

```
<date dur-iso="P8D" when-iso="2007-06-01"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

## att.datable.w3c

**att.datable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*att.datable[affiliation country date editor event eventName gender idno licence name placeName resp title]*

### Attributes

when

supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
```

```
<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 4
```

5</date>  
 <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>  
 <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>  
 <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>  
 <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>  
 <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>  
 <date when="---01">the first of the month</date>  
 <date when="--08">August</date>  
 <date when="2006">MMVI</date>  
 <date when="0056">AD 56</date>  
 <date when="-0056">56 BC</date>  
 </p>  
 This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the  
 <date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.  
 <opener>



	<pre> &lt;dateline&gt;   &lt;placeName&gt;Dor chester, Village,&lt;/ placeName&gt;   &lt;date when="182 8-03-02"&gt;March 2 d. 1828.&lt;/date&gt; &lt;/dateline&gt; &lt;salute&gt;To   Mrs. Cornell,&lt;/ salute&gt; Sunday &lt;ti me when="12:00:0 0"&gt;noon.&lt;/time&gt; &lt;/opener&gt; </pre>
notBefore	<p>specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.w3c</p>
notAfter	<p>specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.w3c</p>
from	<p>indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.temporal.w3c</p>
to	<p>indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p>

**Datatype** teidata.te  
mporal.w  
3c

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|
@to">The @when attribute cannot be
used with any other att.dataable.w3c
attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notBefore">The @from and
@notBefore attributes cannot be used
together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notAfter">The @to and
@notAfter attributes cannot be used
together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

## Example

```
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-
06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</
date>
```

## Note

The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

## att.datcat

**att.datcat** provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by an external taxonomy, in this way establishing the identity of information containers and values, and providing means of interpreting them. [[10.5.2. Lexical View](#) [19.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](#)]

**Module**  
**Members**  
**Attributes**

tei <i>category taxonomy</i> datcat	<p>provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>valueDatcat provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. Used especially where a</p>
---	--

	contrast with <i>datcat</i> is needed.
	<b>Status</b> Optional
	<b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace
targetDatcat	provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the <i>datcat</i> attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.
	<b>Status</b> Optional
	<b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace

## Example

The example below presents the TEI encoding of the [name-value pair](#) <part of speech, common noun>, where the name (key) 'part of speech' is abbreviated as 'POS', and the value, 'common noun' is symbolized by 'NN'. The entire name-value pair is encoded by means of the element <f>. In TEI XML, that element acts as the container, labeled with the *name* attribute. Its contents may be complex or simple. In the case at hand, the content is the symbol 'NN'. The *datcat* attribute relates the feature *name* (i.e., the key) to the data category 'part of speech', while the attribute *valueDatcat* relates the feature *value* to the data category *common noun*. Both these data categories should be defined in an external and preferably open reference taxonomy or ontology.

```
<fs>
  <f datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-
ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"
  name="POS">
    <symbol value="NN"
  valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-
224d-6f94-eebbe6861545"/>
  </f>
<!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

'NN' is the symbol for common noun used e.g. in the [CLAWS-7 tagset](#) defined by the University Centre for Computer Corpus Research on Language at the University of Lancaster. The very same data category used for tagging an early version of the British National Corpus, and coming from the [BNC Basic \(C5\) tagset](#), uses the symbol 'NN0' (rather than 'NN'). Making these values semantically interoperable would be extremely difficult without a human expert if they were not anchored in a single point of an established

reference taxonomy of morphosyntactic data categories. In the case at hand, the string '[http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR\\_C-1256\\_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545](http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eebbe6861545)' is both a persistent identifier of the data category in question, as well as a pointer to a shared definition of *common noun*. While the symbols 'NN', 'NN0', and many others (often coming from languages other than English) are implicitly members of the container category 'part of speech', it is sometimes useful not to rely on such an implicit relationship but rather use an explicit identifier for that data category, to distinguish it from other morphosyntactic data categories, such as gender, tense, etc. For that purpose, the above example uses the *datcat* attribute to reference a definition of *part of speech*. The reference taxonomy in this example is the [CLARIN Concept Registry](#). If the feature structure markup exemplified above is to be repeated many times in a single document, it is much more efficient to gather the persistent identifiers in a single place and to only reference them, implicitly or directly, from feature structure markup. The following example is much more concise than the one above and relies on the concepts of feature structure declaration and feature value library, discussed in chapter FS.

```
<fs>
  <f fVal="#commonNoun" name="POS" />
<!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

The assumption here is that the relevant feature values are collected in a place that the annotation document in question has access to — preferably, a single document per linguistic resource, for example an `<fsdDecl>`

that is XIncluded as a sibling of <text> or a child of <encodingDesc>; a <taxonomy> available resource-wide (e.g., in a shared header) is also an option. The example below presents an <fvLib> element that collects the relevant feature values (most of them omitted). At the same time, this example shows one way of encoding a *tagset*, i.e., an established inventory of values of (in the case at hand) morphosyntactic categories.

```
<fvLib n="POS values">
  <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
7c344c5f26c3"
  value="NN" xml:id="commonNoun"/
>
  <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-
88ee16b944ae"
  value="NP" xml:id="properNoun"/>
<!-- ... -->
</fvLib>
```

Note that these Guidelines do not prescribe a specific choice between *datcat* and *valueDatcat* in such cases. The former is the generic way of referencing a data category, whereas the latter is more specific, in that it references a data category that represents a value. The choice between them comes into play where a single element — or a tight element complex, such as the <f>/<symbol> complex illustrated above — make it necessary or useful to distinguish between the container data category and its value.

## Example

In the context of dictionaries designed with semantic interoperability in mind, the following example ensures that the <pos> element is interpreted as the same information container as in the case of the example of <f name="POS"> above.

```

<gramGrp>
  <pos datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-
ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"
  valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-
224d-6f94-eebbe6861545">NN</pos>
</gramGrp>

```

Efficiency of this type of interoperable markup demands that the references to the particular data categories should best be provided in a single place within the dictionary (or a single place within the project), rather than being repeated inside every entry. For the container elements, this can be achieved at the level of `<tagUsage>`, although here, the *valueDatcat* attribute should be used, because it is not the `<tagUsage>` element that is associated with the relevant data category, but rather the element `<pos>` (or `<case>`, etc.) that is described by `<tagUsage>`:

```

<tagsDecl partial="true">
<!-- ... -->
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-
c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="pos"
      targetDatcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
7c344c5f26c3">Contains the part of sp
eech.</tagUsage>
    <tagUsage gi="case"
      targetDatcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1840_9f4e319c-f233-6c90-9117-
7270e215f039">Contains information
about the grammatical case that the de
scribed form is inflected for.</
tagUsage>
<!-- ... -->
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>

```

Another possibility is to shorten the URIs by means of the `<prefixDef>` mechanism, as illustrated below:



```

<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern
    ="pos"
    replacementPattern="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
7c344c5f26c3"/>
  <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern
    ="adj"
    replacementPattern="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1230_23653c21-fca1-edf8-fd7c-
3df2d6499157"/>
</listPrefixDef>
<!-- ... -->
<entry>
<!--...-->
  <form>
    <orth>isotope</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos datcat="ccr:pos"
      valueDatcat="ccr:adj">adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
<!--...-->
</entry>

```

This mechanism creates implications that are not always wanted, among others, in the case at hand, suggesting that the identifiers 'pos' and 'adj' belong to a namespace associated with the CLARIN Concept Repository (CCR), whereas that is solely a shorthand mechanism whose scope is the current resource. Documenting this clearly in the header of the dictionary is therefore advised. Yet another possibility is to associate the information about the relationship between a TEI markup element and the data category that it is intended to model already at the level of modeling the dictionary resource, that is, at the level of the ODD, in the <equiv> element that is a child of <elementSpec> or <attDef>.

The <taxonomy> element is a handy tool for encoding taxonomies that are

## Example

later referenced by att.datcat attributes, but it can also act as an intermediary device, for example holding a fragment of an external taxonomy (or ‘flattening’ an external ontology) that is relevant to the project or document at hand. (It is also imaginable that, for the purpose of the project at hand, the local <taxonomy> element combines vocabularies that originate from more than one external taxonomy or ontology.) In such cases, the <taxonomy> creates a local layer of indirection: the att.datcat attributes internal to the resource may reference the <category> elements stored in the header (as well as the <taxonomy> element itself), whereas these same <category> and <taxonomy> elements use att.datcat attributes to reference the original taxonomy or ontology.

```

<encodingDesc>
<!-- ... -->
<classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
  <taxonomy datcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
index.html"
    xml:id="UD-SYN">
    <desc>
      <term>UD syntactic relations</
term>
    </desc>
    <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
acl.html"
      xml:id="acl">
      <catDesc>
        <term>acl</term>: Clausal modifi
er of noun (adjectival clause)</
catDesc>
      </category>
      <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/acl-
relcl.html"
        xml:id="acl_relcl">
        <catDesc>

```

```

        <term>acl:relcl</term>: relative cl
ause modifier</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
advcl.html"
        xml:id="advcl">
        <catDesc>
            <term>advcl</term>: Adverbial cl
ause modifier</catDesc>
        </category>
    <!-- ... -->
</taxonomy>
</classDecl>
</encodingDesc>

```

The above fragment was excerpted from the GB subset of the [ParlaMint project](#) in April 2023, and enriched with att.datcat attributes for the purpose of illustrating the mechanism described here. Note that, in the ideal case, the values of att.datcat attributes should be persistent identifiers, and that the addressing scheme of Universal Dependencies is treated here as persistent for the sake of illustration. Note also that the contrast between *datcat* used on <taxonomy> on the one hand, and the *valueDatcat* used on <category> on the other, is not mandatory: both kinds of relations could be encoded by means of the generic *datcat* attribute, but using the former for the container and the latter for the content is more user-friendly.

## Example

The *targetDatcat* attribute is designed to be used in, e.g., feature structure declarations, and is analogous to the *targetLang* attribute of the att.pointing class, in that it describes the object that is being referenced, rather than the referencing object.

```

<fDecl name="POS"
    targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-
ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">
    <fDescr>part of speech (morphosynta
ctic category)</fDescr>

```

```

<vRange>
  <vAlt>
    <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-
eece6861545"
    value="NN"/>
    <symbol datcat="http://
hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
1371_fbebd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-
88ee16b944ae"
    value="NP"/>
  <!-- ... -->
</vAlt>
</vRange>
</fDecl>

```

Above, the `<fDecl>` uses *targetDatcat*, because if it were to use *datcat*, it would be asserting that it is an instance of the container data category *part of speech*, whereas it is not — it models a container (`<f>`) that encodes a part of speech. Note also that it is the `<f>` that is modeled above, not its values, which are used as direct references to data categories; hence the use of *datcat* in the `<symbol>` element.

## Example

The `att.datcat` attributes can be used for any sort of taxonomies. The example below illustrates their usefulness for describing usage domain labels in dictionaries on the example of the *Dicionário da Língua Portuguesa* by António de Moraes Silva, retro-digitised in the [MORDigital project](#).

```

<!-- in the dictionary header --
><encodingDesc>
  <classDecl>
    <taxonomy xml:id="domains">
<!--...-->
    <category xml:id="domain.medical_
and_health_sciences">
      <catDesc xml:lang="en">Medical a
nd Health Sciences</catDesc>
      <catDesc xml:lang="pt">Ciências

```

```

Médicas e da Saúde</catDesc>
  <category valueDatcat="https://
vocabs.rossio.fcsh.unl.pt/pub/
morais_domains/pt/page/0025"
  xml:id="domain.medical_and_healt
h_sciences.medicine">
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">
      <term>Medicine</term>
      <gloss>
<!--...-->
      </gloss>
    </catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="pt">
      <term>Medicina</term>
      <gloss>
<!--...-->
      </gloss>
    </catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
<!--...-->
</taxonomy>
</classDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<!--

```

inside an <entry> element: -->

```

<usg type="domain"
valueDatcat="#domain.medical_and_
health_sciences.medicine">Med.</
usg>

```

In the Morais dictionary, the relevant domain labels are in the header, getting referenced inside the dictionary, from <usg> elements. The vocabulary used for dictionary-internal labelling is in turn anchored in the [MorDigital controlled vocabulary service](#) of the NOVA University of Lisbon – School of Social Sciences and Humanities (NOVA FCSH).

The TEI Abstract Model can be expressed as a hierarchy of attribute-value matrices (AVMs) of various types and of various levels of complexity, nested or grouped in various ways. At the most abstract level, an AVM consists of an information container and the value (contents) of that

## Note

container.

A simple example of an XML serialization of such structures is, on the one hand, the opening and closing tags that delimit and name the container, and, on the other, the content enclosed by the two tags that constitutes the value. An analogous example is an attribute name and the value of that attribute.

In a TEI XML example of two equivalent serializations expressing the name-value pair `<part-of-speech,common-noun>`, namely `<pos>commonNoun</pos>` and `pos="common-noun"`, one would classify the element `<pos>` and the attribute `pos` as containers (mapping onto the first member of the relevant name-value pair), while the character data content of `<pos>` or the value of `pos` would be seen as mapping onto the second member of the pair.

The `att.datcat` class provides means of addressing the containers and their values, while at the same time providing a way to interpret them in the context of external taxonomies or ontologies. Aligning e.g. both the `<pos>` element and the `pos` attribute with the same value of an external reference point (i.e., an entry in an agreed taxonomy) affirms the identity of the concept serialised by both the element container and the attribute container, and optionally provides a definition of that concept (in the case at hand, the concept *part of speech*).

The value of the `att.datcat` attributes should be a PID (persistent identifier) that points to a specific — and, ideally, shared — taxonomy or ontology. Among the resources that can, to a lesser or greater extent, be used as inventories of (more or less) standardized linguistic categories are

the GOLD ontology, [CLARIN CCR](#), [OLiA](#), or [TermWeb's DatCatInfo](#), and also the [Universal Dependencies](#) inventory, on the assumption that its URIs are going to persist. It is imaginable that a project may choose to address a local taxonomy store instead, but this risks losing the advantage of interchangeability with other projects.

Historically, *datcat* and *valueDatcat* originate from the (now obsolete) ISO 12620:2009 standard, describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). The current version of that standard, ISO 12620-1, does not standardize the serialization of pointers, merely mentioning the TEI *att.datcat* as an example.

Note that no constraint prevents the occurrence of a combination of *att.datcat* attributes: the `<fDecl>` element, which is a natural bearer of the *targetDatcat* attribute, is an instance of a specific modeling element, and, in principle, could be semantically fixed by an appropriate reference taxonomy of modeling devices.

## att.declarable

**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [[16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<i>availability bibl listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace particDesc settingDesc sourceDesc</i>
<b>Attributes</b>	default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.tr uthValue

<b>Legal values are:</b>	<b>true</b>	This element is selected if its parent is selected
	<b>false</b>	This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. <i>[Default]</i>

**Note**

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual



parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#). Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of *true*.

## att.declaring

**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [[16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*body p ptr term text*

**Attributes**

decls

(declarations) identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note**

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#).

## att.dimensions

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*date*

**Attributes**

- att.ranging
  - *@atLeast*
  - *@atMost*

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>@min</i></li> <li>• <i>@max</i></li> <li>• <i>@confidence</i></li> </ul>	
unit	names the unit used for the measurement	<b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <code>data.enumerated</code> <b>Suggested values include:</b> <b>cm</b> (centimetres) <b>mm</b> (millimetres) <b>in</b> (inches) <b>line</b> lines of text <b>char</b> (characters) character set of text
quantity	specifies the length in the units specified	<b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> <code>data.numeric</code>
extent	indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of	

	words.
	<b>Status</b> Optional
	<b>Datatype</b> teidata.text
	<gap extent="5 words"/>
	<height extent="half the page"/>
precision	characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.
	<b>Status</b> Optional
	<b>Datatype</b> teidata.certainty
scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
	<b>Status</b> Optional
	<b>Datatype</b> teidata.enumerated
	<b>Sample all values include:</b>
	measurement applies to all instances.
	<b>most</b>
	measurement applies to most of the instances.

nces  
insp  
ecte  
d.

**range**  
meas  
urem  
ent  
appli  
es to  
only  
the  
speci  
fied  
rang  
e of  
insta  
nces.

## att.docStatus

**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*bibl*

**Attributes**

status

describes the  
status of a  
document either  
currently or, when  
associated with a  
dated element, at  
the time indicated.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.e  
numerate  
d

**Sample values include:**

**approved**  
**candidate**

**cleared**

**deprecat  
ed**

**draft**

*[Default]*  
**embargoed**  
**expired**  
**frozen**  
**galley**  
**proposed**  
**published**  
**recommendation**  
**submitted**  
**unfinished**  
**withdrawn**

## Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="published"
    when="2010-10-21"/>
  <change status="cleared" when="2010-10-02"/>
  <change status="embargoed"
    when="2010-08-02"/>
  <change status="frozen" when="2010-05-01"
    who="#MSM"/>
  <change status="draft" when="2010-03-01"
    who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

## att.editLike

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

[11.3.1. Origination](#) [14.3.2. The Person Element](#) [12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](#)

**Module**

**Members**

**Attributes**

tei

*affiliation date event eventName*

*gender name org person place*

*placeName*

evidence

indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

**Suggested internal**

**ed** there is

**values**

**include:** internal evidence to support the intervention.

**external**

there is external evidence to

support  
the  
intervention.  
on.

**conjecture**

the  
intervention  
on or  
interpretation  
has  
been  
made by  
the  
editor,  
catalogue  
r, or  
scholar  
on the  
basis  
of  
their  
expertise.

instant

indicates whether  
this is an instant  
revision or not.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.x  
TruthValue

**Default** false

## Note

The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Each pointer on the *source* (if present)

corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

## att.fragmentable

**att.fragmentable** provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<i>p</i>	
<b>Attributes</b>	part	specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.
	<b>Status</b>	Optional
	<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.enumerated
	<b>Legal values are:</b>	Y (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified



fied)  
resp  
ect

**N**

(no)  
the  
elem  
ent  
is  
not  
frag  
ment  
ed,  
or no  
clai  
m is  
mad  
e as  
to its  
com  
plete  
ness  
*[Def  
ault]*

**I**

(initi  
al)  
this  
is  
the  
initia  
l  
part  
of a  
frag  
ment  
ed  
elem  
ent

**M**

(med  
ial)  
this  
is a  
medi  
al  
part

of a  
frag  
ment  
ed  
elem  
ent

**F**

(final  
) this  
is  
the  
final  
part  
of a  
frag  
ment  
ed  
elem  
ent

**Note**

The  
values *I*,  
*M*, or *F*  
should be  
used only  
where it  
is clear  
how the  
element  
may be  
reconstit  
uted.

## att.global

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes](#)]

**Module**

**Members**

*tei*

*TEI affiliation availability bibl body  
catDesc category classDecl country  
date desc editor encodingDesc event  
eventName fileDesc forename gender  
idno item licence list listEvent listOrg  
listPerson listPlace name nameLink  
note org p particDesc person place  
placeName profileDesc ptr pubPlace  
publicationStmt publisher resp  
respStmt roleName settingDesc  
sourceDesc surname taxonomy*

Attributes

*teiHeader term text title titleStmt*

- att.global.linking
  - @corresp
  - @synch
  - @sameAs
  - @copyOf
  - @next
  - @prev
  - @exclude
  - @select
- att.global.rendition
  - @rend
  - @style
  - @rendition
- att.global.responsibility
  - @cert
  - @resp
- att.global.source
  - @source

xml:id (identifier)  
provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** ID  
**Note** The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section [3.11. Reference Systems](#).

n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily

unique within the document.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.text

**Note** The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

xml:lang

(language)  
indicates the  
language of the  
element content  
using a 'tag'  
generated  
according to [BCP  
47](#).

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.la  
nguage

<p> ... The conseq  
uences of

this rapid depopul  
ation were the loss  
of the last

<foreign xml:lang=  
"rap">ariki</

foreign> or chief

(Routledge 1920:2  
05,210) and their c  
onnections to

ancestral territoria  
l organization.</p>

**Note** The  
*xml:lang*  
value will  
be  
inherited  
from the  
immediat  
ely  
enclosing  
element,  
or from  
its  
parent,  
and so on  
up the  
documen  
t  
hierarchy  
. It is  
generally  
good  
practice  
to specify  
*xml:lang*

at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of *xml:lang*.

The authoritative list

of  
registere  
d  
language  
subtags  
is  
maintain  
ed by  
IANA and  
is  
available  
at  
[https://w  
ww.iana.o  
rg/assign  
ments/lan  
guage-  
subtag-  
registry](https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry).  
For a  
good  
general  
overview  
of the  
construct  
ion of  
language  
tags, see  
[https://w  
ww.w3.or  
g/Intern  
ational/arti  
cles/lang  
uage-  
tags/](https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/), and  
for a  
practical  
step-by-  
step  
guide,  
see  
[https://w  
ww.w3.or  
g/Intern  
ational/qu  
estions/q  
a-  
choosing-](https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-)

[language-tags.en.php](http://language-tags.en.php).

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must



remain  
consisten  
t with  
their  
(IETF)Int  
ernet  
Engineeri  
ng Task  
Force  
definition  
s.

xml:base

provides a base  
URI reference with  
which applications  
can resolve relative  
URI references into  
absolute URI  
references.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.p  
ointer

```
<div type="bibl">
  <head>Selections
from <title level="
m">The Collected
Letters of Robert S
outhey. Part 1: 179
1-1797</title>
</head>
<listBibl xml:base
="https://romantic-
circles.org/sites/
default/files/
imported/editions/
southey_letters/
XML/">
  <bibl>
    <ref target="lett
erEEEd.26.3.xml">
      <title>Robert S
outhey to Grosveno
r Charles Bedford<
/title>, <date when
="1792-04-03">3 A
pril 1792</date>.
    </ref>
  </bibl>
```

xml:space

```
<bibl>
  <ref target="letterEEd.26.57.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Anna Seward</title>, <date when="1793-09-18">18 September 1793</date>.
  </ref>
</bibl>
<bibl>
  <ref target="letterEEd.26.85.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Robert Lovell</title>, <date from="1794-04-05"
      to="1794-04-06">5-6 April, 1794</date>.
  </ref>
</bibl>
</listBibl>
</div>
```

signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Legal values are:** **default** signals that the application's default white-

space  
processing  
modes  
are  
acceptable

**preserve**  
indicates  
the  
intent  
that  
applications  
preserve  
all  
white  
space

**Note** The [XML specification](#)  
provides  
further  
guidance  
on the  
use of  
this  
attribute.  
Note that  
many  
parsers  
may not  
handle  
xml:space  
correctly.

## att.global.linking

**att.global.linking** provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [[17. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](#)]

### Module

linking

### Members

*att.global*[*TEI affiliation availability bibl body catDesc category classDecl country date desc editor encodingDesc event eventName fileDesc forename gender idno item licence list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace name nameLink note org p particDesc person place placeName profileDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher resp respStmt roleName settingDesc sourceDesc surname taxonomy teiHeader term text title titleStmt*]

### Attributes

corresp

(corresponds)  
points to elements  
that correspond to  
the current  
element in some  
way.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞  
occurrences  
of teidata  
.pointer  
separated by  
whitespace

```
<group>
  <text xml:id="t1-
g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
    <body xml:id="t1-
g1-t1-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>He Wha
kamaramatanga m
o te Ture Hoko, Rii
hi hoki, i nga When
ua Maori, 1876.</
head>
```

```

        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
  <text xml:id="t1-
g1-t2"
    xml:lang="en">
    <body corresp="
#t1-g1-t1-body1"
    xml:id="t1-g1-t2-
body1">
      <div type="chapt
er">
        <head>An Act t
o regulate the Sale,
Letting, and Dispos
al of Native Lands,
1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
</group>

```

In this example a `<group>` contains two `<text>`s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using *xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```

<!-- In a placeogra
phy called "places.
xml" --><place cor

```

```

resp="people.xml#
LOND2 people.xml
#GENI1"
xml:id="LOND1">
  <placeName>Lon
don</placeName>
  <desc>The city of
London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary pe
rsonography called
"people.xml" -->
<person corresp="
places.xml#LOND1
#GENI1"
xml:id="LOND2">
  <persName type=
"lit">London</
persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical ch
aracter representin
g the city of <place
Name ref="places.
xml#LOND1">Lon
don</
placeName>.</p>
  </note>
</person>
<person corresp="
places.xml#LOND1
#LOND2"
xml:id="GENI1">
  <persName type=
"lit">London's Gen
ius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personificatio
n of London's geniu
s. Appears as an
    allegorical char
acter in mayoral sh
ows.
  </p>
  </note>
</person>
In this example, a
<place> element

```

	<p>containing information about the city of London is linked with two &lt;person&gt; elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.</p>
synch	<p>(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>
sameAs	<p>points to an element that is the same as the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional  <b>Datatype</b> teidata.p</p>

copyOf	<p>points to an element of which the current element is a copy.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.p</p> <p><b>Note</b> Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.</p>
next	<p>points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.p</p> <p><b>Note</b> It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>
prev	<p>(previous) points to the previous</p>



	<p>element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> teidata.pointer</p> <p><b>Note</b> It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>
exclude	<p>points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.</p> <p><b>Status</b> Optional</p> <p><b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>
select	<p>selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the</p>

degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞ occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace

**Note** This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

## att.global.rendition

**att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators](#)]

**Module**

**Members**

tei

*att.global*[TEI affiliation availability  
bibl body catDesc category classDecl  
country date desc editor encodingDesc  
event eventName fileDesc forename  
gender idno item licence list listEvent  
listOrg listPerson listPlace name  
nameLink note org p particDesc  
person place placeName profileDesc  
ptr pubPlace publicationStmnt

## Attributes

*publisher resp respStmt roleName  
settingDesc sourceDesc surname  
taxonomy teiHeader term text title  
titleStmt]*

*rend*

(rendition)

indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

<head rend="align (center) case(allcaps)">

<lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/><hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.

</head>

**Note**

These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation

ion vary  
too much  
from text  
to text  
and the  
decision  
to record  
or ignore  
individual  
character  
istics  
varies too  
much  
from  
project to  
project.  
Some  
potentiall  
y useful  
conventio  
ns are  
noted  
from time  
to time at  
appropria  
te points  
in the  
Guideline  
s. The  
values of  
the *rend*  
attribute  
are a set  
of  
sequence  
-  
indetermi  
nate  
individual  
tokens  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce.

style

contains an  
expression in some  
formal style

definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>
>Duchesse <lb/>of
<lb/>Newcastle, <
lb/>On Her
<lb/>
  <hi style="font-variant: normal">N
ew Blazing-
World</hi>.
</head>
```

**Note** Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information

on  
concerni  
ng the  
source,  
not any  
particula  
r output.

The  
formal  
language  
in which  
values for  
this  
attribute  
are  
expresse  
d may be  
specified  
using the  
<styleDef  
Decl>  
element  
in the  
TEI  
header.

If *style*  
and  
*rendition*  
are both  
present  
on an  
element,  
then  
*style*  
overrides  
or  
complem  
ents  
*rendition*.  
*style*  
should  
not be  
used in  
conjuncti  
on with  
*rend*,  
because

the latter  
does not  
employ a  
formal  
style  
definition  
language.

rendition

points to a  
description of the  
rendering or  
presentation used  
for this element in  
the source text.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞  
occurren  
ces  
of teidata  
.pointer  
separate  
d by  
whitespa  
ce  
<head rendition=" #ac #sc">  
<lb/>To The <lb/>  
>Duchesse <lb/>of  
<lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>  
<lb/>On Her  
<lb/>  
<hi rendition="#normal">New Blazin  
g-World</hi>.  
</head>  
<!-- elsewhere... -->  
<rendition scheme="css"  
xml:id="sc">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>  
<rendition scheme="css"  
xml:id="normal">font-variant: normal</rendition>  
<rendition scheme

```
= "css"
xml:id="ac">text-align: center</rendition>
```

**Note** The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper. If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a



formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *rend*. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a `<rendition>` element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

## att.global.responsibility

**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](#) [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#) [12.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes](#) [18.3. Spans and Interpretations](#) [14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*att.global*[*TEI affiliation availability*  
*bibl body catDesc category classDecl*  
*country date desc editor encodingDesc*  
*event eventName fileDesc forename*  
*gender idno item licence list listEvent*  
*listOrg listPerson listPlace name*  
*nameLink note org p particDesc*  
*person place placeName profileDesc*  
*ptr pubPlace publicationStmt*  
*publisher resp respStmt roleName*  
*settingDesc sourceDesc surname*  
*taxonomy teiHeader term text title*  
*titleStmt*]

### Attributes

cert	(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> teidata.pr obCert
resp	(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note**

ce  
To reduce  
the  
ambiguit  
y of a  
*resp*  
pointing  
directly  
to a  
person or  
organizat  
ion, we  
recomme  
nd that  
*resp* be  
used to  
point not  
to an  
agent  
(*<person*  
*>* or  
*<org>*)  
but to a  
*<respSt*  
*mt>*,  
*<author*  
*>*,  
*<editor>*  
or similar  
element  
which  
clarifies  
the exact  
role  
played by  
the  
agent.  
Pointing  
to  
multiple  
*<respSt*  
*mt>s*  
allows  
the  
encoder  
to specify  
clearly  
each of

the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

## Example

Blessed are the  
`<choice>`  
`<sic>cheesemakers</sic>`  
`<corr cert="high" resp="#editor">pe`  
`acemakers</corr>`  
`</choice>`: for they shall be called the  
 children of God.

## Example

`<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`<l>Punkes, Panders, bafe extortionizi`  
`ng`  
`sla<choice>`  
`<sic>n</sic>`  
`<corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u`  
`</corr>`  
`</choice>es,</l>`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`</lg>`  
`<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->`  
`<!-- ... -->`  
`<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber`  
`">`  
`<resp when="2014">Transcriber</`  
`resp>`  
`<name>Janelle Jenstad</name>`  
`</respStmt>`

## att.global.source

**att.global.source** provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](#) [3.3.3. Quotation](#) [8.3.4. Writing](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*att.global*[*TEI affiliation availability*  
*bibl body catDesc category classDecl*  
*country date desc editor encodingDesc*

*event eventName fileDesc forename  
gender idno item licence list listEvent  
listOrg listPerson listPlace name  
nameLink note org p particDesc  
person place placeName profileDesc  
ptr pubPlace publicationStmt  
publisher resp respStmt roleName  
settingDesc sourceDesc surname  
taxonomy teiHeader term text title  
titleStmt]*

## Attributes

**source** specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace  
**Schematron** <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@source]"><sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source),' ')"><sch:report test="( self::tei:classRef | self::tei:dataRef | self::tei:elementRef | self::tei:macroRef

```

|
self::tei:
moduleR
ef |
self::tei:s
chemaSp
ec ) and
$srcs[2]"
> When
used on a
schema
descripti
on
element
(like
<sch:valu
e-of selec
t="name(
.)"/>), the
@source
attribute
should
have only
1 value.
(This one
has
<sch:valu
e-of selec
t="count(
$srcs)"/>
.)
</sch:rep
ort>
</sch:rul
e>

```

# Note

The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a

schema  
 compone  
 nt  
 (<classR  
 ef>,  
 <dataRef  
 >,  
 <element  
 Ref>,  
 <macroR  
 ef>,  
 <module  
 Ref>, or  
 <schema  
 Spec>),  
 it  
 identifies  
 the  
 source  
 from  
 which  
 declarati  
 ons for  
 the  
 compone  
 nts  
 should be  
 obtained.  
 On other  
 elements  
 it  
 provides  
 a pointer  
 to the  
 bibliogra  
 phical  
 source  
 from  
 which a  
 quotation  
 or  
 citation is  
 drawn.  
 In either  
 case, the  
 location  
 may be

provided  
 using any  
 form of  
 URI, for  
 example  
 an  
 absolute  
 URI, a  
 relative  
 URI, a  
 private  
 scheme  
 URI of  
 the form  
 tei:x.y.z,  
 where  
 x.y.z  
 indicates  
 the  
 version  
 number,  
 e.g.  
 tei:4.3.2  
 for TEI  
 P5  
 release  
 4.3.2 or  
 (as a  
 special  
 case)  
 tei:curre  
 nt for  
 whatever  
 is the  
 latest  
 release,  
 or a  
 private  
 scheme  
 URI that  
 is  
 expanded  
 to an  
 absolute  
 URI as  
 documen  
 ted in a  
 <prefixD



ef>.  
 When  
 used on  
 elements  
 describin  
 g schema  
 compone  
 nts,  
*source*  
 should  
 have only  
 one  
 value;  
 when  
 used on  
 other  
 elements  
 multiple  
 values  
 are  
 permitted  
 .

### Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl x
ml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012"
>'Collaboration' is a problematic and s
hould be a contested
term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

### Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Gr
ammatical theories are in flux, and the
more we learn, the
less we seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual
of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pu
bPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publis
her>University of
Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>
```

2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.

```
</bibl>
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

```
<schemaSpec ident="myODD"
  source="mycompiledODD.xml">
  <!-- further declarations specifying the
  components required -->
</schemaSpec>
```

Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

## Example

## Example

## att.internetMedia

**att.internetMedia** provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

### Module

### Members

### Attributes

tei

ptr

mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

## Example

In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```
<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml;
  charset=UTF-8"
  target="https://
  raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/
```

**Note**

dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>

This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in [RFC 2046](#). The [list of types](#) is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

**att.locatable**

**att.locatable** provides attributes for referencing locations by pointing to entries in a canonical list of places. [[2.3.9. The Unit Declaration 14.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei	
<b>Members</b>	<i>event</i>	
<b>Attributes</b>	where	indicates one or more locations by pointing to a <place> element or other canonical description. <b>Status</b> Optional <b>Datatype</b> 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**att.naming**

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings 14.3.7. Names and Nyms](#)]

<b>Module</b>	tei
<b>Members</b>	<i>att.personal[eventName forename</i>

## Attributes

*name placeName roleName surname]*  
*affiliation country editor event*  
*pubPlace*

- att.canonical
- @key
- @ref

role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences  
of teidata  
.enumerated  
separated by  
whitespace

nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞

occurrences  
of teidata  
.pointer  
separate

**Note**

d by  
whitespace  
The value  
must  
point  
directly  
to one or  
more  
XML  
elements  
by means  
of one or  
more  
URIs,  
separated  
by  
whitespace.  
If  
more  
than one  
is  
supplied,  
the  
implication  
is that  
the name  
is  
associated  
with  
several  
distinct  
canonical  
names.

**att.personal**

**att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#)]

**Module**

**Members**

**Attributes**

tei  
*eventName forename name  
placeName roleName surname*  
• att.naming  
• @role  
• @nymRef  
• att.canonical  
• @key

full	• @ref	indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.
		<b>Status</b> Optional
		<b>Datatype</b> teidata.e
		numerate d
		<b>Legal values are:</b>
		<b>yes</b> (yes) the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]
		<b>abb</b> (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form
		<b>init</b> (initial)

letter)  
the  
name  
component  
is  
indicated  
only  
by  
one  
initial.

sort

(sort) specifies the  
sort order of the  
name component in  
relation to others  
within the name.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.count

## att.placement

**att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [[3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](#)  
[12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*note*

**Attributes**

place

specifies where  
this item is placed.

**Status** Recommended

**Datatype** 1-∞  
occurrences  
of teidata.  
enumerated  
separated by  
whitespace

**Suggested** top

**ed values** at  
the

**include:** top  
of  
the  
page

**bottom**  
at  
the  
foot  
of  
the  
page

**margin**  
in  
the  
marg  
in  
(left,  
right  
, or  
both  
)

**opposite**  
on  
the  
oppo  
site,  
i.e.  
facin  
g,  
page

**overleaf**  
on  
the  
othe  
r  
side  
of  
the  
leaf

**above**  
abov  
e the  
line

**right**  
to  
the  
right



, e.g.  
to  
the  
right  
of a  
vertical  
line  
of  
text,  
or to  
the  
right  
of a  
figure

**below**  
below  
the  
line

**left**  
to  
the  
left,  
e.g.  
to  
the  
left  
of a  
vertical  
line  
of  
text,  
or to  
the  
left  
of a  
figure

**end**  
at  
the  
end  
of  
e.g.

chapter  
or  
volume.

**inline**

within the  
body of  
the  
text.

**inspace**

in a  
predefined  
space,  
for  
example  
left  
by  
an  
earlier  
scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]  
</add>
```

```
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the  
foot of the current
```

```
page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

## **att.pointing**

**att.pointing** provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to

other elements by means of one or more URI references. [[1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators](#) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*licence note ptr term*

**Attributes**

targetLang

specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a 'language tag' generated according to [BCP 47](#).

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.language

**Schematic** `<sch:rule context="tei:*[not (self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">  
<sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang  
should only be used on  
<sch:name/> if  
@target is  
specified.  
</sch:assert>  
</sch:rule>`

`<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">  
<ptr target="pol/UDHR/`

```

text.xml#pol_txt_1-
head"
  targetLang="pl"
  type="tuv"
  xml:id="pol-
swh_aln_2.1.1-
ptr"/>
  <ptr target="swh/
UDHR/
text.xml#swh_txt_1
-head"
  targetLang="sw"
  type="tuv"
  xml:id="pol-
swh_aln_2.1.2-
ptr"/>
</linkGrp>

```

In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

**Note** The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for

its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

target

specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1-∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer

separated by whitespace  
**Note** One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace.  
 Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI %20Consortium.

evaluate

(evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer

	is itself a pointer.
<b>Status</b>	Optional
<b>Datatype</b>	teidata.e numerate d
<b>Legal values are:</b>	<p><b>all</b> if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.</p> <p><b>one</b> if the element pointed</p>

ed to  
is  
itself  
a  
point  
er,  
then  
its  
targ  
et  
(whe  
ther  
a  
point  
er or  
not)  
is  
take  
n as  
the  
targ  
et of  
this  
point  
er.

**none**

no  
furth  
er  
eval  
uatio  
n of  
targ  
ets is  
carri  
ed  
out  
beyo  
nd  
that  
need  
ed to  
find  
the  
elem  
ent  
speci  
fied



in  
the  
point  
er's  
targ  
et.

**Note** If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

## att.ranging

**att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

**Module**

tei

**Members**

*att.dimensions[date]*

**Attributes**

atLeast

gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.n  
umeric

atMost

gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.n  
umeric

min

where the measurement

summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.n  
umeric

max

where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.n  
umeric

confidence

specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.pr  
obability

### Example

The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from  
<del rend="overstrike">  
  <gap atLeast="1" atMost="2"  
    extent="one or two letters" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>  
</del>  
Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.

### Example

Americares has been supporting the h

ealth sector in Eastern Europe since 1986,  
 and since 1992 has provided <measure  
 atLeast="120000000"  
 commodity="currency" unit="USD">  
 more  
 than \$120m</measure> in aid to Ukrainians.

## att.sortable

**att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[10.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*bibl event idno item list listEvent  
 listOrg listPerson listPlace org person  
 place term*

### Attributes

sortKey

supplies the sort  
 key for this  
 element in an  
 index, list or group  
 which contains it.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.word

David's other principal  
 backer, Josiah ha-Kohen  
 <index indexName="NAMES">  
 <term sortKey="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">  
 Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>  
 </index> b. Azarya  
 , son of one of the last  
 gaons of Sura was David's  
 own first cousin.

**Note** The sort key is  
 used to determine the  
 sequence and

grouping  
of entries  
in an  
index. It  
provides  
a  
sequence  
of  
character  
s which,  
when  
sorted  
with the  
other  
values,  
will  
produced  
the  
desired  
order;  
specifics  
of sort  
key  
construct  
ion are  
applicatio  
n-  
dependen  
t

Dictionar  
y order  
often  
differs  
from the  
collation  
sequence  
of  
machine-  
readable  
character  
sets; in  
English-  
language  
dictionari  
es, an  
entry for  
*4-H* will

often  
 appear  
 alphabeti  
 zed  
 under  
 'fourh',  
 and  
*McCoy*  
 may be  
 alphabeti  
 zed  
 under  
 'maccoy',  
 while *A1*,  
*A4*, and  
*A5* may  
 all  
 appear in  
 numeric  
 order  
 'alphabet  
 ized'  
 between  
 'a-' and  
 'AA'. The  
 sort key  
 is  
 required  
 if the  
 orthogra  
 phy of  
 the  
 dictionar  
 y entry  
 does not  
 suffice to  
 determin  
 e its  
 location.

## **att.typed**

**att.typed** provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](#) [18.1.1. Words and Above](#) [3.6.1. Referring Strings](#) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#) [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](#) [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse](#) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](#) [4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions](#) [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions](#) [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](#) [4.4. Virtual Divisions](#) [14.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](#) [12.3.1.1. Core](#)

[Elements for Transcriptional Work](#) [17.1.1. Pointers and Links](#) [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](#) [13.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text](#) [23.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG](#) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](#) [24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](#)

## Module

tei

## Members

*TEI affiliation bibl country date desc  
event eventName forename gender  
idno list listEvent listOrg listPerson  
listPlace name nameLink note org  
place placeName ptr roleName  
surname term text title*

## Attributes

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

```
<div type="verse">
```

```
>
```

```
<head>Night in Terras</head>
```

```
<lg type="stanza">
```

```
>
```

```
<l>At evening tra  
mping on the hot w  
hite road</l>
```

```
<l>...</l>
```

```
</lg>
```

```
<lg type="stanza">
```

```
>
```

```
<l>A wind sprang  
up from nowhere a  
s the sky</l>
```

```
<l>...</l>
```

```
</lg>
```

```
</div>
```

**Note**

The *type* attribute is present on a number of

elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

subtype

(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.

**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Note** The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.

## Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]">
<sch:assert test="@type">The
```

## Note

<sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>  
When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in [24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](#) .

## att.written

**att.written** provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](#)]

### Module

tei

### Members

*note p text*

### Attributes

hand

points to a  
<handNote>  
element describing  
the hand  
considered  
responsible for the  
content of the  
element concerned.  
**Status** Optional  
**Datatype** teidata.p  
ointer

## Macros

### macro.limitedContent

**macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

### Module

tei

### Used by

desc

### Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
```



```

/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_macro.limitedContent =
  ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
model.inter )*

```

## macro.paraContent

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

**Module** tei  
**Used by** p title  
**Content model**

```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_macro.paraContent = ( text | tei_m
odel.paraPart )*

```

## macro.phraseSeq

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](#)]

**Module** tei  
**Used by** affiliation country editor eventName  
forename gender name nameLink  
placeName pubPlace publisher  
roleName surname term

## Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
  >
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>

```

</content>

## Declaration

```
tei_macro.phraseSeq =  
(  
  text  
  | tei_model.gLike  
  | tei_model.attributable  
  | tei_model.phrase  
  | tei_model.global  
)*
```

## macro.phraseSeq.limited

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

resp

**Content model**

```
<content>  
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"  
    minOccurs="0">  
    <textNode/>  
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"  
  />  
    <classRef key="model.global"/>  
  </alternate>  
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited =  
( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_  
model.global )*
```

## macro.specialPara

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

item licence note

**Content model**

```
<content>  
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"  
    minOccurs="0">  
    <textNode/>
```

```

<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.divPart"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_macro.specialPara =
(
    text
    | tei_model.gLike
    | tei_model.phrase
    | tei_model.inter
    | tei_model.divPart
    | tei_model.global
)*

```

## Datatypes

### teidata.certainty

**teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

teidata.probCert

**Content model**

```

<content>
<valList type="closed">
  <valItem ident="high"/>
  <valItem ident="medium"/>
  <valItem ident="low"/>
  <valItem ident="unknown"/>
</valList>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"

```

## Note

Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values *high*, *medium*, or *low*. The value *unknown* should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

## teidata.count

**teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger" />
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger
```

**Note**

Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

## teidata.duration.iso

**teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/;+\\-]+" }
```

**Example**

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

**Example**

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

**Example**

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

**Example**

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

**Note**

A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all

unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

## **teidata.duration.w3c**

**teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="duration"/>
</content>
```

## **Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration
```

## **Example**

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

## **Example**

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

## **Example**

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

## **Example**

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

## **Note**

A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S

(second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the [W3C specification](#).

## **teidata.enumerated**

**teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

**Module** tei  
**Used by** teidata.gender teidata.sexElement:  
**Content model**

```
<content>  
  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>  
</content>
```

### **Declaration**

#### **Note**

tei\_teidata.enumerated = teidata.word  
Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.

## **teidata.gender**

**teidata.gender** defines the range of attribute values used to represent the gender of a person, persona, or character.

**Module** tei  
**Used by** Element:  
**Content model**

```
<content>  
  <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>  
>  
</content>
```

### **Declaration**

#### **Note**

tei\_teidata.gender = teidata.enumerated  
Values for attributes using this

datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

Values for this datatype should not be used to encode morphological gender (cf. <gen>, *msd* as defined in att.linguistic, and [10.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms](#)).

## teidata.language

**teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](#)]

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="language"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident=""/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.language = xsd:language | (
  "" )
```

**Note**

The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](#). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language**

The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script**

The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

**region**

Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

**variant**

An IANA-registered variation. These codes 'are used to indicate



additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.

#### **extension**

An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags.

There are currently only two extensions in use. Extension T indicates that the content was transformed. For example *en-t-it* could be used for content in English that was translated from Italian. Extension T is described in the informational [RFC 6497](#).

Extension U can be used to embed a variety of locale attributes. It is described in the informational [RFC 6067](#).

#### **private use**

An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](#) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed

by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

***sn***

Shona

***zh-TW***

Taiwanese

***zh-Hant-HK***

Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

***en-SL***

English as spoken in Sierra Leone

***pl***

Polish

***es-MX***

Spanish as spoken in Mexico

***es-419***

Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-language).

## **teidata.name**

**teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="Name"/>
</content>
```

## **Declaration**

**Note**

tei\_teidata.name = xsd:Name  
Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see [https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name)): for example they cannot

include whitespace or begin with digits.

## **teidata.numeric**

**teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="double"/>
    <dataRef name="token"
      restriction="(\-?[\\d]+/\-?[\\d]+)"/>
    <dataRef name="decimal"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

## **Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.numeric =
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

## **Note**

Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented

as a ratio by the string 1/2.

## **teidata.outputMeasurement**

**teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\-+]?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?(%|cm|
mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|
vmin|vmax)"/>
</content>
```

## **Declaration**

```
tei_teidata.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[\-+]?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?(%|cm|
mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|
vmin|vmax)"
  }
```

## **Example**

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
  between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white
  background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" width="600px"/>
</figure>
```

## **Note**

These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](#).

## **teidata.pattern**

**teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

**Module**  
**Used by**  
**Content model**

tei

```
<content>  
  <dataRef name="token"/>  
</content>
```

**Declaration**

tei teidata.pattern = token

**Note**

[Wikipedia](#)

This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

**teidata.pointer**

**teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

**Module**  
**Used by**  
**Content model**

tei

```
<content>  
  <dataRef name="anyURI" restriction  
    ="\S+"/>  
</content>
```

**Declaration**

tei teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }

**Note**

The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier \(URI\): Generic Syntax](#). Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987 Internationalized Resource Identifiers \(IRIs\) mapping to URIs](#). For example, <https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%> is encoded as <https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25> while <http://وزارة.موقع> is encoded as <http://xn-->

4gbrim.xn----  
rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/

## **teidata.probCert**

**teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

**Module** `tei`

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>  
<alternate>  
  <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>  
  <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>  
</alternate>  
</content>
```

### **Declaration**

```
tei teidata.probCert = teidata.probabil  
ity | teidata.certainty
```

## **teidata.probability**

**teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

**Module** `tei`

**Used by** `teidata.probCert`

**Content model**

```
<content>  
  <dataRef name="double">  
    <dataFacet name="minInclusive" val  
ue="0"/>  
    <dataFacet name="maxInclusive" val  
ue="1"/>  
  </dataRef>  
</content>
```

### **Declaration**

#### **Note**

`tei teidata.probability = xsd:double`  
Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

## **teidata.replacement**

**teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

**Module**  
**Used by**  
**Content model**

tei

```
<content>
  <textNode/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

tei\_teidata.replacement = text

**teidata.sex**

**teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify the sex of an organism.

**Module**  
**Used by**  
**Content model**

tei  
Element:

```
<content>
  <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>
>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

**Note**

tei\_teidata.sex = teidata.enumerated  
Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

**teidata.temporal.iso**

**teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats - Information interchange - Representation of dates and times*.

**Module**  
**Used by**  
**Content model**

tei

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="date"/>
    <dataRef name="gYear"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gDay"/>
    <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
    <dataRef name="time"/>
    <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

```

<dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/
+\\-]+"\>
</alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei_teidata.temporal.iso =
  xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-
9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\\-]+" }

```

## Note

If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

For all representations for which ISO 8601:2004 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.

## teidata.temporal.w3c

**teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```

<content>
<alternate>
  <dataRef name="date"/>
  <dataRef name="gYear"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
  <dataRef name="time"/>

```



```

    <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

## Declaration

```

tei teidata.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime

```

## Note

If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

## teidata.text

**teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

### Module

tei

### Used by

### Content model

```

<content>
  <dataRef name="string"/>
</content>

```

## Declaration

## Note

```

tei teidata.text = string

```

Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

## teidata.truthValue

**teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

### Module

tei

### Used by

### Content model

```

<content>
  <dataRef name="boolean"/>

```

</content>

**Declaration**

**Note**

tei\_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean  
The possible values of this datatype are *1* or *true*, or *0* or *false*.

This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. *unknown*, or *inapplicable*, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

**teidata.version**

**teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

Element:

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

tei\_teidata.version = token { pattern =  
"[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }

**Note**

The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<https://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

**teidata.versionNumber**

**teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

## Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-
z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/>
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_teidata.versionNumber =
  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[
\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

## teidata.word

**teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

teidata.enumerated

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[^\\p{C}\\p{Z}]+"/>
</content>
```

## Declaration

```
tei_teidata.word = token { pattern = "[
^\\p{C}\\p{Z}]+" }
```

## Note

Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

## teidata.xTruthValue

**teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="boolean"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident="unknown"/>
      <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
```

</content>

**Declaration**

tei\_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean |  
( "unknown" | "inapplicable" )

**Note**

In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

**teidata.xpath**

**teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

**Module**

tei

**Used by**

**Content model**

<content>  
<textNode/>  
</content>

**Declaration**

tei\_teidata.xpath = text

**Note**

Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in [6.2.](#).

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the [article at OWASP](#).